



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>





STANFORD UNIVERSITY LIBRARIES

(26)

15 -

3.07

A GRAMMAR
OF THE
BOHEMIAN OR ČECH LANGUAGE

MORFILL

A GRAMMAR
OF THE
BOHEMIAN OR ČECH LANGUAGE
MORFILL

HENRY FROWDE, M.A.

PUBLISHER TO THE UNIVERSITY OF OXFORD



LONDON, EDINBURGH, AND NEW YORK

A GRAMMAR
OF THE
BOHEMIAN OR ČECH
LANGUAGE

BY

W. R. MORFILL, M.A.

//
READER IN RUSSIAN AND THE OTHER SLAVONIC LANGUAGES IN THE UNIVERSITY
OF OXFORD; CORRESPONDING MEMBER OF THE ROYAL SCIENTIFIC
SOCIETY OF BOHEMIA

Oxford
AT THE CLARENDON PRESS

1899

PEM
1878

Oxford

PRINTED AT THE CLARENDON PRESS

BY HORACE HART, M.A.

PRINTER TO THE UNIVERSITY

INTRODUCTION

I HAVE compiled this Grammar in the hope that a study of the Bohemian language and literature may induce Englishmen to feel sympathy with the struggles of a noble Slavonic people. Few countries of Europe have made greater efforts in the cause of religious and civil liberty; and the renaissance of Bohemia in the second decade of the present century must be reckoned as one of the most extraordinary phenomena which the world has ever witnessed. The enthusiasm of a few scholars gave rise to a great political movement. The national spirit was there: it only waited to be quickened.

The Bohemian or Čech¹ language belongs to the western branch of the great Slavonic family. These languages are now generally grouped by scholars in two classes: (1) the South-Eastern branch, including Old Slavonic (called also Old Bulgarian or Old Slovenish), Russian, Malorussian, White Russian, Serbian, and Slovenish; and (2) the Western branch, including Polish, with the interesting Kashubish dialect, spoken near Danzig; Bohemian or Čech, spoken in Bohemia and Moravia,

¹ By its inhabitants Bohemia is called Čechy; as a name of the people I have elsewhere ventured to use the form Chekh, so as to preserve the pronunciation. The Polish form ordinarily used in England (Czech) leads to ambiguities.

with its cognate Slovak, spoken in Hungary; Upper and Lower Serbish, called incorrectly Wendish, spoken about Bautzen (in Saxony) and Kottbus (in Prussia); and the extinct Polabish, once spoken in what was afterwards the kingdom of Hanover. The Slavonic people called Čechš first made their appearance in the territory which they now occupy about 451 A.D. It had previously been settled by the Boii (hence the usual name of the country, as if home of the Boii), a Keltic tribe, and the Marcomanni, a Teutonic tribe.

If we include the Slovaks in Hungary (in the north-west corner, their capital being Pressburg), the Bohemian language is now spoken by more than seven millions¹. The Slovakish dialect is to all intents and purposes identical with Bohemian, exhibiting a few peculiarities. Both Kollár and Schafarik were Slovaks, and the writings of Holly, Sladkovič, and Chalupka are perfectly familiar to their Bohemian brethren, although they used the Slovakish dialect.

It is much to be regretted that attempts should have been made to develop it as a literary language; the Slovaks are thereby only playing into the hands of their enemies.

It would be impossible in this Introduction to enumerate more than the most prominent of the Bohemian authors. In the early period we get the so-called *Chronicle* of Dalimil, which dates from the beginning of the fourteenth century. Of this an excellent edition has been published by Prof. Mourek, of Prague, from the MS. preserved in the Library of Trinity

¹ See article by the late Prof. Šembera in the *Časopis Musea Království Českého*. The exact number, according to him, is 7,581,187.

College, Cambridge (*Kronika Dalimilova podle Rukopisu Cambridgekého*. Prague, 1892). To the fourteenth century also belongs the *Alexandreis*, which is a free adaptation from the Latin. Jireček assigns it to a period as early as the thirteenth century. At the beginning of the fifteenth century a complete version of the Bible was in existence. Before, however, we leave the fourteenth century we must mention some satirical poetry, the most curious of which is perhaps 'The Groom and the Scholar' (*Podkoní a Žák*), which gives us a quaint picture of mediaeval manners. To this period also belong the poems of Smil Flaška. But the greatest literary figure is Thomas Štítný, who has left some interesting moral treatises in the vernacular, which show how well developed Bohemian prose was at this early period. The addresses of Štítný to his children were edited by Erben in 1852 (*Knižky Šestery o obecných Věcech Křesťanských*). He is supposed to have died about 1400.

Here may be mentioned a Bohemian version of the *History of the Trojan War*, composed by Guido of Colonna, from Dictys Cretensis and Dares Phrygius, which, to judge from the number of MSS. in existence, must have been very popular. It was printed at Pilsen in 1468, and was one of the first books which issued from the Bohemian Press. We now come to the great name of Hus, a man whose life is too well known to need a detailed account. I shall confine myself to his influence upon Bohemian literature. During the latter part of the fourteenth century and the beginning of the fifteenth the University of Prague was at the height of its splendour. The doctrines of Wickliffe were introduced into the country by the mysterious

Englishman, Peter Payne, a man destined to make a great reputation in Bohemia, although not much is known about his life in his native country¹. Hus was born in 1369, took the degree of M.A. in 1396, and was made rector of the University of Prague in 1402. All have read how he attended the Council of Constance and was there burnt in 1415. Hus wrote a great deal in Latin, but also in Bohemian. His works in the latter language were collected and edited by Erben in 1865-68. They are for the most part controversial. One of them is entitled, *Dcerka aneb o poznání cesty pravé k spasení* (The Daughter, or the Knowledge of the Right Way to Salvation)². Hus corrected the Bohemian translation of the Bible, and may be said to have fixed the orthography of the language; in the present century a few modifications have been introduced, thus *w* is now always written *v*, *au* has become *ou*, and *g* has given place to *j*. It may be as well to mention these changes in case any students should refer to old Bohemian books³. The country was now for some time agitated by religious factions. We can only briefly allude to the famous captain, Jan Žižka, who fortified his camp in an original manner, which has been frequently imitated since.

About this time translations of the travels of Marco Polo, and of those which went under the name of Sir John Mandeville, made their appearance. Peter Chelčický deserves a brief mention. He was one of the leaders of the United Brethren, and, being a cobbler by trade, was nicknamed Kopyto, or the shoe-last.

¹ See *A Forgotten Great Englishman*, by James Baker, London, 1894.

² See *John Hus*, by A. H. Wratislaw, London, 1882.

³ The progress of Bohemian orthography is clearly given by Gebauer.

His works were written between 1430 and 1456. The most celebrated are his *Postils* and the *Net of Truth*. He was a great denouncer of war, somewhat anticipating the views of the Quakers and some of the recent Russian sects.

In the sixteenth century the country felt the full influence of the Renaissance, and many translations from the classics appeared. Especially to be mentioned are Adam Daniel Veleslavín and Hrubý z Jelení, or Gelenius as he was called, according to the prevalent fashion of latinizing names. To the sixteenth century also belongs the chronicler Václav Hájek, a very interesting writer, although somewhat inaccurate and fond of fables, as our own Holinshed was.

In spite, however, of the spirited attempts of the Bohemians to preserve their constitution and language, as shown by the enactment of the Statute of 1615, that no one could hold office in Bohemia who was unacquainted with Čech, their independence was crushed at the terrible battle of the White Mountain in 1620.

For two centuries Bohemia practically disappears from the literary history of Europe. Such books as were produced were almost exclusively the works of exiles, as those of the great pedagogue Komenský, called among us by his Latin name Comenius (1592-1670). Besides his Latin works he wrote many in the vernacular, and the loss of the MS. of his great Bohemian dictionary is especially to be regretted¹. Towards the close of the eighteenth century and in the earlier part of

¹ See the excellent *Life of Comenius* by Prof. Kvačala, in German. (Leipzig, 1892.) Also *Great Didactic of Comenius*, by M. W. Keatinge, London, 1896.

the present, a revival of the national spirit took place; the Bohemian Museum at Prague was founded in 1818, and the efforts of such men as Dobrovský, Palacký, Schafarik, Jungmann, and Kollár placed the Bohemian language on a sure footing. Palacký told the world his country's history, Schafarik traced the ancient abodes of the Slavonic race, Jungmann published a copious dictionary of the Bohemian language, and Kollár became the national poet. Their work has been continued till the present day, and Bohemia can now boast a goodly array of authors, including such names as Vrchlický, Svatopluk Čech, Sládek, Eliška Krásnohorská (the *nom de guerre* of Jindřiška Pech), Prof. Kalousek, the historian, and many others. The reader who wishes to know something of the earlier literature may be referred to the pages of Count Lützow's book (*Bohemia, an Historical Sketch*¹. London, 1896).

The plan of the present little work may be stated briefly as follows. The classification of the nouns and verbs is based, with only slight modifications, upon those given by Miklosich in his great Comparative Grammar (*Vergleichende Grammatik der Slavischen Sprachen*. Second Edition, Vienna, 1876). The language is thus brought into harmony with the principles which I have endeavoured to carry out in my Russian, Serbian, and Bulgarian grammars. As I have said on previous occasions, in order to understand these languages thoroughly we must always keep in mind the relations in which they stand to the oldest Slavonic known, i.e. the Palaeoslavonic,

¹ There is also an account by the present writer: *Early Slavonic Literature*, London, 1883. For those who can read Bohemian, see Tieftrunk, *Historie Literatury České* (several editions).

as it has come down in the translation of the Bible and other works. When we make a comparative study of the Slavonic languages, we feel how one explains the other and how apparent anomalies are removed. I have consulted many grammars of the language. The volumes of the monumental work of Gebauer which have appeared up to the present time (*Historická Mluvnice Jazyka Českého*) have been constantly used; much useful information has been furnished by the Bohemian Grammar of Joseph Masařík (*Böhmische Schulgrammatik*, Prag, 1878) and the handy little volume published in Hartleben's series by K. Kunz, *Die Kunst die Böhmische Sprache schnell zu erlernen*, and also by the Bohemian Grammar of J. Fr. Vymazal, Brünn, 1881. To those acquainted with the German language there are abundant facilities for acquiring Bohemian, but in English the only available works are two dictionaries, the first by Prof. V. E. Mourek, of the University of Prague, of which the English-Bohemian part has appeared and a portion of the Bohemian-English, and an *English-Bohemian and Bohemian-English Dictionary*, published by Karel Jonaš, lately deceased, at Racine, in Wisconsin, U.S. For Bohemians desiring to learn English there are the *Učebné Listy Jazyka Anglického pro Samouky* (Handbook of the English language for self-instruction), by Dr. V. E. Mourek, and a convenient little Grammar by Prof. Sládek.

For those desirous of pursuing further studies in Bohemian literature the following books may be recommended:—

(1) *Výbor z Literatury České* (Selections from Bohemian literature), two large volumes of which have appeared, published at the expense of the Maticě Česká or Bohemian Literary Society.

In the second volume the extracts are continued to the end of the sixteenth century. Persons to whom the subject is unfamiliar will be surprised, on opening these volumes, at the riches of old Bohemian literature.

(2) *Anthologie z Literatury České* (Anthology of Bohemian literature), by Joseph Jireček, of which several editions have appeared. This excellent book gives selections from the earliest times to the present day.

A good summary of Bohemian history will be found in the *Děje Království Českého* (History of the Kingdom of Bohemia), by Prof. Tomek, to which Prof. Kalousek has added three excellent maps. It is a great pity that this work has not been translated into English. As yet we have been too content to learn about the Bohemians from people who are interested only in depreciating them, but the valuable work of Count Lützwow previously alluded to will no doubt do much to dissipate the prejudices of ignorance. As I have not space on the present occasion to give a complete sketch of Bohemian literature, I am obliged to pass over many other valuable works.

I have also with reluctance been compelled to omit extracts from the older Bohemian literature, for fear of confusing the student with archaisms. It will be observed that many of the passages selected for translation are from the useful work of Prof. Tomek already alluded to—*Děje Království Českého*, Prague, 1891. The English may occasionally appear somewhat clumsy, but it was not considered advisable to depart too much from the Bohemian idiom.

W. R. M.

CONTENTS

	PAGE
Introduction	v
I. Phonology.	
The Alphabet	1
The Consonants	3
II. Accidence.	
(1) INFLECTED PARTS OF SPEECH :—	
The Noun	5
First Declension : a-stems	6
Second Declension : o-stems	9
Third Declension : Feminines in <i>a</i> and <i>e</i>	10
Fourth Declension : u-stems	11
Fifth Declension : i-stems	11
Sixth Declension : Consonantal Stems	12
(1) v-stems	12
(2) n-stems :—	
(a) Masculine	12
(b) Neuter	13
(3) s-stems	14
(4) t-stems	15
(5) r-stems	15
The Adjective	16
Comparison of Adjectives	*19
<i>všecek</i> or <i>všechen</i> , all	20

CONTENTS

	PAGE
Numerals :—	
(1) Cardinal	20
(2) Ordinal	21
The Hours of the Day	23
Fractions of Numerals	23
Collective Numerals	23
The Pronoun :—	
The Personal Pronoun	24
The Reflexive Pronoun	25
Possessive Pronouns	26
Demonstrative Pronouns	27
Relative and Interrogative Pronouns	28
Indefinite Pronouns	29
The Verb	
The Prepositional Prefixes	31
(1) The Infinitive Stem	34
The Aspects of the Verb	34
(2) The Present Stem	36
A. Conjugation with the Present Suffix :—	
First Class. Stems without Connecting Vowel :—	
(1) Those in <i>d</i> and <i>t</i>	37
(2) Those in <i>s</i>	37
(3) Those in <i>b</i> and <i>v</i>	38
(4) Those in <i>h</i> and <i>k</i>	38
(5) Those in <i>m</i> and <i>n</i> , nasal stems	39
(6) Those in <i>r</i> and <i>l</i>	39
(7) Those which end in a vowel	40
Second Class. Stems with Connecting Vowel :—	
<i>na</i> -stems	41
Third Class. Stems with Connecting Vowel <i>ē</i> :—	
First Group	41
Second Group	42
Fourth Class. Stems with Connecting Vowel <i>i</i> 42	

CONTENTS

XV

PAGE

Fifth Class. Stems with Connecting Vowel *a* :—

First Group 43

Second Group 43

Third Group 44

Fourth Group 45

Sixth Class. *ova* (*u-a*) stems 45

B. Conjugation without the Present Suffix :—

(1) *věd*, to know 45

(2) *dad*, to give 46

(3) *jad*, to eat 46

(4) *jes*, to be 46

Voice, Mood, Tense, &c. 46

The Conditional Mood 47

Impersonal Verbs 48

Reflexive Verbs 49

Irregular Verbs 49

The Substantive Verb, *býti*, to be 52

Paradigm of the Tenses of a Regular Verb 54

Participles 56

(2) UNINFLECTED PARTS OF SPEECH :—

The Adverb 56

Prepositions 59

Conjunctions 63

Interjections 63

III. Syntax.

The Concord 64

The Noun 64

The Verb :—

 The Sequence of the Tenses 67

 Purpose 67

Order of Words in a Sentence 68

Passages to be translated into Bohemian 70

Some Bohemian Phrases 123

Selected Passages 127

	PAGE
Reading Lessons :—	
Vineta. (<i>Jan Kollár</i>)	140
Bohemian Literature under Wenceslaus IV. (<i>Tomek</i>)	141
The Battle. (<i>J. V. Sládek</i>)	142
The Life of St. Vojtěch. (<i>František Palacký</i>) . . .	143
Love and Death. (<i>Jaroslav Vrchlický</i>)	144
Storm and Peace. (<i>Jaroslav Vrchlický</i>)	144
An Interior. (<i>Svatopluk Čech</i>)	145
In a Strange Land. (<i>Eliška Krásnohorská</i>) . . .	145
Bohemia after the Thirty Years' War. (<i>J. Malý</i>) . .	146
Details of the Poet Kollár. (<i>Zdeňka Šemberova</i>) . .	147
Palacký and the Frankfort Parliament. (<i>Jan Kalousek</i>)	148
The Death of the Blind King at Creçy. (<i>V. V. Tomek</i>)	149
Kublaj Chán. Vidění ve snu. (<i>J. V. Sládek</i>) . . .	150
<hr/>	
Vocabulary	153

I. PHONOLOGY

THE Bohemian alphabet has the following letters :—

- a*, as in Italian.
 - á*, the same sound, but somewhat longer.
 - b*, as in English.
 - c*, as *ts*; *noc*, pronounced *nots*.
-

ERRATA

- Page 21, line 16, left-hand column, for *prvn* read *první*
" 32, " 17, for *matka* read *matku*
" 37, " 3, for *past* read *pass.* (passive)
" 48, " 11, for *ní* read *nich*
" 72, " 4, left-hand column, for *pojati* read *pojiti*
" 75, " 8, right-hand column, for *přátely* read *přátel*
" 125, line 8 from bottom, for *s.m.* read *s.f.*; also on page 153, line 7
from bottom, right-hand column.

Morfill's *Bohemian Grammar*.

- n*, as in English.
ň, as *ny*.
o, always short.
ó, only occurs in the interjection.
p, as in English.
r, stronger than in English. Sometimes vocalic; *vide infra*.
ř, pronounced *rzh*, as *řeč*, *řehet*.
s, sharp, as in English.
š, pronounced as English *sh*.
t, as in English.
t', as in French *métier*.
u, as *oo* in English.
ú, the same sound, somewhat longer.
ů, also like *oo*.
v, as in English.
y, as Italian *i*.
ý, same sound, but longer.
z, as in English.
ž, as *zh*, like *s* in *pleasure*, or French *j* in *jour*.

When the vowels are to be pronounced long they are accented, as *á*, *é*, *í*, *ú*. Long *ó* practically does not exist in Bohemian. It is ordinarily changed into *ů*, which is pronounced like *oo* (or the *o* in *do*).

ou is the only diphthong, and is pronounced something like English *oo*, only longer, and more of each vowel is heard.

In pronunciation the difficult groups of sounds which occur are frequently softened; thus, the *j* is not heard before a consonant at the beginning of a word; *jsem*, I am, is pronounced *sem*; *jméno*, a name, *méno*; *dcera*, a daughter, *cera* (cf. the Polish *córka*); *hřbet*, the back, *řbet*; *hvězda*, a star, *vězda*; and *ctnost*, virtue, *cnost*, the latter now having become the ordinary orthography. In the *v* first declension, before *e*, *h*

becomes *ž*; *ch*, *š*; *k*, *č*; *r*, *ř*; and in the nominative plural, before *i* (the nom. suffix), *h* becomes *z*; *ch*, *š*; and *k*, *c*.

In the third declension of feminine nouns in the dative and locative cases of the singular, the mutations of *h*, *ch*, *k*, and *r* into *z*, *š*, *c*, *ř*, also take place; thus *učiti se uloze*, to learn a lesson from *uloha*; *Praha*, Prague; *v Praze*, in Prague.

THE CONSONANTS.

The consonants may be thus divided:—

- (a) Gutturals: *g*, *h*, *ch*, *k*.
- (b) Palatals: *j*.
- (c) Liquids: *l*, *n*, *ň*, *r*, *ř*.
- (d) Dentals: *c*, *č*, *d*, *d'*, *s*, *s'*, *t*, *t'*, *z*, *ž*.
- (e) Labials: *b*, *f*, *m*, *p*, *v*.

Or into:—

- (a) Hard: *h*, *ch*, *k*, *r*, *n*, *d*, *t*.
- (b) Soft: *c*, *č*, *d'*, *j*, *ň*, *ř*, *š*, *ť*, *ž*.
- (c) Indefinite: *b*, *f*, *l*, *m*, *p*, *s*, *v*, *z*.

After the hard consonants we get *y*, *y'*; after the soft, *i*, *i'*; and after the indefinite, sometimes *y* and sometimes *i*. In this way must be explained the change of *h* into *z* or *ž*, *ch* into *š*, *k* into *c* (or *č*). Thus *matka*, the mother; *matce*, of the mother: *krotký pták*, the tame bird; *krotcí ptáci*, the tame birds. So also *vlk*, a wolf; *vlčí zub*, a wolf's tooth: *tele*, a calf; *telecí maso*, veal. *d* becomes *z* in one instance; as *hovězí maso*, beef, from *hovado*, an ox. The remaining hard letters, *r*, *n*, *d*, *t*, are pronounced soft when written *ř*, *ň*, *d'*, *t'*.

The following table will be found useful for remembering the change of the consonants in Bohemian:—

<i>d</i> into <i>z</i> .	<i>r</i> into <i>ř</i> .
<i>h</i> into <i>z</i> , <i>ž</i> .	<i>s</i> into <i>š</i> .
<i>ch</i> into <i>š</i> .	<i>t</i> into <i>c</i> .
<i>k</i> into <i>c</i> , <i>č</i> .	

To avoid hiatus we have the use of:—

(1) The consonant *v* (thus *rukovět*, a guide, for *rukojet*, i.e. taking by the hand); *navyknoúti*, to get used to, where the root is *uk*, the same as in *nauka*, art. This *v* is frequently introduced at the beginning of words. Cf. *vajce*, an egg, with Russian я́йцо.

(2) The consonant *h*, as *Holomuc*, used by the common people for *Olomuc*.

(3) The consonant *j*, as *jíti*, to go, originally *iti* (see Gebauer, i. 570).

The liquids *l* and *r*, between two consonants, have a vocalic sound, as *vlk*, a wolf, pronounce *vůlk* (the *u* as in *but*); *prst*, a finger, pronounce *půrst*; *krk*, the neck, pronounce *kůrk*.

Both in English and German this brief *e* occurs in syllables, and is not pronounced; cf. *silber*, silver, with Bohemian *brzo*, soon; *fackel*, a torch, with *řekl*, he spake; *fächert*, with *chrt*, a greyhound. Cf. also such words in English as *gentleman*, where there is only a distinct vowel in the first syllable.

The accent in Bohemian is always on the first syllable of a word. Prepositions of one syllable take the accent with a substantive, being considered compounded with the word, but the accent has nothing to do with the length of a vowel. Even in words of four and five syllables the accent is on the first, so that in the accentuation of a word of four syllables there is another accent on the penult, as *velebený*, praised; five-syllable words have sometimes another accent on the penult, sometimes on the antepenult, e.g. *velevěhlasný*, very celebrated.

II. ACCIDENCE



PARTS OF SPEECH may be thus subdivided :—

- (1) Inflected—viz. noun, adjective, numeral, pronoun, verb.
- (2) Uninflected—viz. adverb, preposition, conjunction, interjection.

(1) INFLECTED.

There is no article in the Bohemian language. If we wish to emphasize the word the pronoun *ten* may be placed before it, or for the indefinite article, *jeden*. The termination of the definite adjective in *-y* or *-i* is also a sign of the article, although its meaning is now somewhat obscured.

THE NOUN.

1. The following are masculine :—

(a) Those denoting members of the male sex—*učitel*, the teacher ; *sluha*, the servant ; *vevoda*, the duke ; *vládce*, the leader.

(b) Those which end in the consonants *h, ch, k, r, d, t, n* ; *b, p, v, l, m, z, s*, as *dub*, the oak ; *čas*, the time.

(c) Some which end in *c, ě, oj, ť, šḷ, and ž*, as *čepec*, a cap ; *nůž*, a knife.

2. The following are feminine :—

(a) Those which express persons of the female sex, as *matka*, the mother ; *paní*, the lady.

(b) All substantives ending in *a*, as *noha*, the fort ; *řeka*, the river, except some denoting offices of men.

(c) Many in *e*, as *růže*, the rose.

(d) Many in *c*, *č*, *d'*, *n'*, *l*, and *ž*, as *řeč*, the speech; *jabloň*, the apple-tree.

(e) A few in *i*, as *lodí*, the ship.

3. Neuter :—

(a) Substantives ending in *o*, as *mléko*, milk.

(b) Many in *e* or *ě*, as *tele*, the calf.

(c) Most of those in *í*, as *zdraví*, health.

The Noun has two numbers, singular and plural¹. There are seven cases—the nominative, genitive, dative, accusative, vocative, instrumental, and locative. The last case is sometimes called prepositional, because it is only used with certain prepositions. The genitive and accusative singular are the same in the case of animate things of the masculine gender in the first declension.

FIRST DECLENSION, FOR ANIMATE THINGS.

a-STEMS (masculine).

holub, a pigeon.

Singular.	Plural.
N. <i>holub</i>	<i>holubi</i> (-ově)
G. <i>holub-a</i>	<i>holub-ů</i> (-ův)
D. <i>holub-u</i> (-ovi)	<i>holub-ům</i>
A. <i>holub-a</i>	<i>holuby</i>
V. <i>holub-e</i>	<i>holub-i</i> (-ově)
I. <i>holub-em</i>	<i>holub-y</i>
L. <i>v holub-u</i> (-ovi)	<i>v holub-ech</i> (-ích)

corresponding to the Russian form in -ъ, as *рабъ*, a slave. In the D. and L. sing. and N., G., V., and L. plur. two forms are in use.

¹ The Old Slavonic had a dual, and of this traces may be seen in Bohemian, as N. *ruce*, hands; G. and L. *rukou*; D. *rukám*; I. *rukama*; N. *nohy*, feet; G. and L. *nohou*; D. *nohám*; L. *nohama*; *k obraně pravé své narodnosti, kteron Maď aři šlapali nohama*, to the protection of the rights of their nationality, which the Magyars trod under foot.

Nouns having *e* in the nominative frequently elide it in the oblique cases, as *sen*, sleep; gen. *sna*.

hráč, a gambler¹.

Singular.	Plural.
N. <i>hráč</i>	<i>hráč-i</i>
G. <i>hráč-e</i>	<i>hráč-ŭ</i>
D. <i>hráč-i</i>	<i>hráč-ŭm</i>
A. <i>hráč-e</i>	<i>hráč-e</i>
V. <i>hráč-i</i>	<i>hráč-i</i>
I. <i>hráč-em</i>	<i>hráč-i</i>
L. <i>v hráč-i</i>	<i>v hráč-ích.</i>

INANIMATE.

strom, a tree.

Singular.	Plural.
N. <i>strom</i>	<i>strom-y</i> (- <i>ové</i>)
G. <i>strom-u</i>	<i>strom-ŭ</i> (- <i>ŭv</i>)
D. <i>strom-u</i>	<i>strom-ŭm</i>
A. <i>strom</i>	<i>strom-y</i>
V. <i>strom-e</i> (- <i>u</i>)	<i>strom-y</i> (- <i>ové</i>)
I. <i>strom-em</i>	<i>strom-y</i>
L. <i>ve strom-ě</i> (- <i>u</i>)	<i>ve strom-ech</i> (- <i>ích</i>).

meč, a sword.

Singular.	Plural.
N. <i>meč</i>	<i>meč-e</i> (- <i>ove</i>)
G. <i>meč-e</i>	<i>meč-ŭ</i> (- <i>ŭv</i>)
D. <i>meč-i</i>	<i>meč-ŭm</i>
A. <i>meč</i>	<i>meč-e</i>
V. <i>meč-i</i>	<i>meč-e</i> (- <i>ové</i>)
I. <i>meč-em</i>	<i>meč-i</i>
L. <i>v meč-i</i>	<i>v meč-ích.</i>

¹ But *herec*, from same root, an actor.

This declension corresponds to the Russian masc. in *ъ*, as *конь*, a horse. To it also belong verbal nouns ending in *e*, as *vůdce*, the leader; *zrádce*, the traitor. In the gen. sing. the termination is in *-a* only when an animate thing is signified; in the case of inanimate things it is *-u*, which is encroaching upon the other form (see Fourth Declension). We find, however, *-a* for the genitive in many names of places, in the names of the months, and those of the days of the week which end in *-ek*; as *ledna*, from *leden*, January; *pondělka*, from *pondělek*, Monday. We get, however, *pátku* from *pátek*, Friday, and there are many other substantives which cannot be brought under any rule, as *večer*, the evening; *hřbitov*, a churchyard; *rybník*, a fishpond; *chléb*, bread. Some substantives take both, e.g. *dvůr*, the court; *duch*, spirit; *hřib*, a mushroom; and sometimes the meaning is thereby differentiated—*ze sna*, from sleep, and *smu*, of a dream; *ducha*, the spirit; *duchu*, breath. In the sing. voc. the common form is in *e*, as *člověk*, *člověče*, a man; *bůh*, *bože*, the God. Besides *u* the locative often ends in *-e*; *u* is used after the prepositions *v* and *na*, as *v hradu*. We are reminded of such forms as the Russian *въ роду*, in the year.

The nom. plural ends in *-é* in some substantives, such as *měšťan*, a citizen, *měšťané*; those ending in *-el*, as *přítel*, a friend; irregular plural, *přátelé*.

Plural nominatives in *-a* have a collective meaning, as *lesa*. word for *lesy*.

In the instrumental we sometimes get the old Slavonic form in *-mi*, as *koňmi*, horses (cf. Russian instances). The noun *bratr*, brother, has a collective form in the plural, nom. and gen. *bratři*, dat. *bratřím*, inst. *bratry*, for *bratřimi*, loc. *bratřích*¹.

¹ Štítný uses *milá batrie* as a plural. See *Knižky Šestery o Obecných Věcech Křesťanských*, ed. Erben, p. 314.

kněz, a priest.

Plural.		Plural.
N. <i>kněz-í</i>		A. <i>kněz-í</i>
G. <i>kněz-í</i>		I. <i>kněz-ími</i>
D. <i>kněz-im</i>		L. <i>v kněz-ích.</i>

kůň, a horse.

Plural.		Plural.
N. <i>kon-í</i>		A. <i>kon-ě</i>
G. <i>kon-í</i>		I. <i>koň-mi</i>
D. <i>kon-ím</i>		L. <i>v kon-ích.</i>

přítel, a friend.

Plural.		Plural.
N. <i>přatel-é</i>		A. <i>přatel-y</i>
G. <i>přátel</i>		I. <i>přátel-y</i>
D. <i>přátel-ům</i>		L. <i>v přátel-ích.</i>

The singular of these three nouns is regular.

In the dative singular the syllable *-ov* is added to names of living beings, as *bratrovi*, to the brother; but *Bůh*, God; *duch*, the spirit; *člověk*, the man; *pan*, mister, have only *-u*. *Tisíc*, a thousand, and *loket*, an elbow, have in the gen. plural *tisíc* and *loket*. The syllable *-ov* in the plural is frequently introduced in the nom. and acc., especially in the case of monosyllables.

SECOND DECLENSION.

O-STEMS.

dělo, a work.

Singular.		Plural.
N. <i>děl-o</i>		<i>děl-a</i>
G. <i>děl-a</i>		<i>děl</i>
D. <i>děl-u</i>		<i>děl-ům</i>
A. <i>děl-o</i>		<i>děl-a</i>
I. <i>děl-em</i>		<i>děl-y</i>
L. <i>v děl-e</i>		<i>v děl-ích.</i>

pole, a field.

Singular.	Plural.
N. <i>pol-e</i>	<i>pol-e</i>
G. <i>pol-e</i>	<i>pol-i</i>
D. <i>pol-i</i>	<i>pol-ím</i>
A. <i>pol-e</i>	<i>pol-e</i>
I. <i>pol-em</i>	<i>pol-i</i>
L. <i>v pol-i</i>	<i>v pol-ích.</i>

vejce, an egg, has in gen. plural *vajec*; dat. *vejctm.*

kořistování, the acquisition of booty.

Singular.	Plural.
N. <i>kořistován-í</i>	<i>kořistován-í</i>
G. <i>kořistován-í</i>	<i>kořistován-í</i>
D. <i>kořistován-í</i>	<i>kořistován-ím</i>
A. <i>kořistován-í</i>	<i>kořistován-í</i>
I. <i>kořistován-ím</i>	<i>kořistován-ími</i>
L. <i>v kořistován-í</i>	<i>v kořistován-ích.</i>

This is given as an instance of the ordinary verbal noun.

THIRD DECLENSION.

a-STEMS (feminine).

ryba, a fish.

Singular.	Plural.
N. <i>ryb-a</i>	<i>ryb-y</i>
G. <i>ryb-y</i>	<i>ryb</i>
D. <i>ryb-ě</i>	<i>ryb-ám</i>
A. <i>ryb-u</i>	<i>ryb-y</i>
V. <i>ryb-o</i>	<i>ryb-y</i>
I. <i>ryb-ou</i>	<i>ryb-ami</i>
L. <i>v ryb-ě</i>	<i>v ryb-ách.</i>

růže, a rose.

Singular.	Plural.
N. <i>růž-e</i>	<i>růž-e</i>
G. <i>růž-e</i>	<i>růž-i</i>
D. <i>růž-i</i>	<i>růž-ím</i>

Singular.	Plural.
A. <i>růž-i</i>	<i>růž-e</i>
V. <i>růž-e</i>	<i>růž-e</i>
I. <i>růž-i</i>	<i>růž-emi</i>
L. <i>v růž-i</i>	<i>v růž-ích.</i>

To this declension belong all feminine nouns ending in *-a*, and some masculine of the same termination (cf. Lat. *scurra*, *verna*, &c.), such as *pastucha*, the shepherd; *vevoda*, the duke. To the second group all feminine nouns ending in *-ě* or *-e*; *dcera*, a daughter, following the Old Slavonic form, has *dcěři* in dat. and loc. singular.

FOURTH DECLENSION.

u-STEMS.

This declension has now been partly swallowed up by the first. It survives only in gen. singular in *-u*, dat. and loc. singular in *-u*, and in the termination *-ov*, which enters several times into the composition of the cases.

FIFTH DECLENSION.

i-STEMS.

kost, f. a bone.

Singular.	Plural.
N. <i>kost</i>	<i>kost-i</i>
G. <i>kost-i</i>	<i>kost-ě</i>
D. <i>kost-i</i>	<i>kost-em</i>
A. <i>kost</i>	<i>kost-i</i>
V. <i>kost-i</i>	<i>kost-i</i>
I. <i>kost-ě</i>	<i>kost-mi</i>
L. <i>v kost-ě</i>	<i>kost-ích.</i>

To this conjugation belong all substantives in *b*, *p*, *m*, *s*, some in *l*, *v*, *z*, the most in *c*, *d*, *l*, and all in *č*, *ř*, *š*, *ž*, as *hus*, the

goose; *sůl*, the salt; *moc*, the power; *reč*, the language; *tvář*, the face.

To this declension also belongs the plural form *děti*, children, which is supplied to the neuter noun *dítě*, gen. *děte*, a child ¹.

SIXTH DECLENSION.

Consonantal Stems.(1) *v*-STEMS.

církev, a church.

Singular.	Plural.
N. <i>církev</i>	<i>církv-e</i>
G. <i>církv-e</i>	<i>církv-i</i>
D. <i>církv-i</i>	<i>církv-ím</i>
A. <i>církev</i>	<i>církv-e</i>
V. <i>církev</i>	<i>církv-e</i>
I. <i>církv-i</i>	<i>církv-emi</i>
L. <i>v církv-i</i>	<i>v církv-ěch.</i>

Like this noun is declined *krev*, blood, which is only found in the singular.

(2) *n*-STEMS—(a) *Masculine.*

kamen, a stone ².

Singular.	Plural.
N. <i>kámen</i>	<i>kamen-y</i>
G. <i>kamen-e</i>	<i>kamen-ů</i>
D. <i>kamen-i</i>	<i>kamen-ům</i>
A. <i>kámen</i>	<i>kamen-y</i>
V. <i>kámen</i>	<i>kamen-y</i>
I. <i>kamen-em</i>	<i>kamen-y</i>
L. <i>v kamen-i</i>	<i>v kamen-ěch.</i>

¹ Of this noun there is also another form, *dítko-a*, neut.; pl. *dítky*, *dítka*, f.

² Nom. in Old Slavonic КАМЪ.

Den, a day, is very irregular.

Singular.	Plural.
N. <i>den</i>	<i>dn-i, dn-ové</i>
G. <i>dn-e</i>	<i>dn-i, dn-ů</i>
D. <i>dn-i</i>	<i>dn-ím, dn-ům</i>
A. <i>den</i>	<i>dn-i, dn-y</i>
V. <i>dn-i</i>	<i>dn-i, dn-ové</i>
I. <i>dn-em</i>	<i>dn-i, dn-y</i>
L. <i>ve dn-i</i>	<i>ve dn-ech.</i>

In the common expression *ve dne*, by day, it will be observed that another form is used in the locative.

Týden, a week (a compounded word), is thus declined:—

N. <i>týden</i>	V. <i>týden</i>
G. <i>těhodn-e</i>	I. <i>týmádn-e</i>
D. <i>témudn-i</i>	L. <i>v témdn-i.</i>
A. <i>týden</i>	

This word is rarely used in the plural, *neděle* being employed in its stead.

(b) *Neuter.*

břime, a burden.

Singular.	Plural.
N. <i>břimě</i>	<i>břemen-a</i>
G. <i>břemen-e</i>	<i>břemen</i>
D. <i>břemen-i</i>	<i>břemen-ům</i>
A. <i>břimě</i>	<i>břemen-a</i>
V. <i>břime</i>	<i>břemen-a</i>
I. <i>břemen-em</i>	<i>břemen-y</i>
L. <i>ve břemen-i</i>	<i>ve břemen-ech.</i>

This form, however, is only occasionally used, and all these nouns are also declined like ordinary neuters of the second declension, having for their nominative the ending *-eno*; e. g. *břemeno, břemena, břemenu*. Other nouns belonging to

this declension are *písmeno*, the letter (of the alphabet); *plemeno*, the race; *rameno*, the arm; *semeno*, the seed; *temeno*, the top of the head.

(3) S-STEMS.

nebe, the sky.

Singular.	Plural.
N. <i>neb-e</i>	<i>neb-esa</i>
G. <i>neb-e</i>	<i>neb-es</i>
D. <i>neb-i</i>	<i>neb-esům</i>
A. <i>neb-e</i>	<i>neb-esa</i>
I. <i>neb-em</i>	<i>neb-esy</i>
L. <i>v neb-i</i>	<i>v neb-esích.</i>

To this declension properly belong *oko*, the eye, and *ucho*, the ear, which are thus declined. The singular is like the ordinary neuter substantive in *-o*; the plural has disappeared except in a few special uses and is now supplied by the dual. Thus:—

N. <i>oči</i> , the eyes	N. <i>uš-i</i> , the ears
G. <i>oč-í</i>	G. <i>uš-i</i>
D. <i>oč-ím</i>	D. <i>uš-ím</i>
A. <i>oči</i>	A. <i>uš-i</i>
V. <i>oči</i>	V. <i>uš-i</i>
I. <i>oč-íma</i>	I. <i>uš-íma</i>
L. <i>v oč-ích.</i>	L. <i>v uš-ích.</i>

Although the singular of these nouns is neuter, the dual is considered feminine, and thus we have *modré oči*, blue eyes. When an adjective or a possessive pronoun is used with the instrumental for the sake of euphony, it takes a dual form, as *slyšel sem to svýma vlastnímá ušima*, I heard it with my own ears.

(4) t-STEMS.

hřibě, a foal.

Singular.	Plural.
N. <i>hřib-ě</i>	<i>hřib-ata</i>
G. <i>hřib-ete</i>	<i>hřib-at</i>
D. <i>hřib-ěti</i>	<i>hřib-atům</i>
A. <i>hřib-ě</i>	<i>hřib-ata</i>
I. <i>hřib-ětem</i>	<i>hřib-aty</i>
L. <i>v hřib-ěti</i>	<i>v hřib-atech.</i>

To this declension belong a great many substantives which express animate things, as *děvče*, a girl; *zvěř*, a wild beast; *kůře*, a fowl; also *hrabě*, a count, and *kníže*, a prince; *paže*, a page, and others.

(5) r-STEMS.

máti, a mother.

Singular.	Plural.
N. <i>mát-i</i>	<i>mat-eře</i>
G. <i>mat-eře</i>	<i>mat-eři</i>
D. <i>mat-eři</i>	<i>mat-eřím</i>
A. <i>mat-eř</i>	<i>mat-eře</i>
I. <i>mat-eři</i>	<i>mat-eřmi</i>
L. <i>v mat-eři</i>	<i>v mat-eřích.</i>

In the same way is declined *neti*, a niece¹; the place of the old form *dcí* properly belonging to this declension is now taken by *dcera*. *Mat* or *mati* is now but little used, its place being taken by *matka*, which together with *dcera*, daughter, belongs to the third declension.

Some nouns are only found in a plural form, as *Čechy*, Bohemia, thus: *Čechy jsou části Rakouska*, Bohemia is a part of Austria.

¹ According to Gebauer, *Mluvnice*, iii. 428, this is quite a modern adaptation.

THE ADJECTIVE.

The Adjective, as in the other Slavonic languages, can take both a definite and an indefinite form, but the definite form is now practically confined to the sing. nom. masc. (as in Bulgarian); the other cases are identical. The definite form has the article *-y* appended, and those adjectives which are primarily without it, and have a predicate form, as *zdráv*, well, can be made definite with this addition, as *zdrávý*; in this form it can go either before or after the noun. There are two classes of adjectives.

First Class, ending in *-y* :—

silný, strong.

Singular.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.	<i>siln-ý</i>	<i>siln-á</i>	<i>siln-é</i>
G.	<i>siln-ého</i>	<i>siln-é</i>	<i>siln-ého</i>
D.	<i>siln-ému</i>	<i>siln-é</i>	<i>siln-ému</i>
A.	<i>siln-ého, silný</i>	<i>siln-ou</i>	<i>siln-é</i>
V.	<i>siln-ý</i>	<i>siln-á</i>	<i>siln-é</i>
I.	<i>siln-ým</i>	<i>siln-ou</i>	<i>siln-ým</i>
L.	<i>v siln-ém</i>	<i>v siln-e</i>	<i>v siln-em.</i>

Plural.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.	<i>sil-ní, silné</i>	<i>siln-é</i>	<i>siln-á</i>
G.	<i>siln-ých</i>	<i>siln-ých</i>	<i>siln-ých</i>
D.	<i>siln-ým</i>	<i>siln-ým</i>	<i>siln-ým</i>
A.	<i>siln-é</i>	<i>siln-é</i>	<i>siln-á</i>
V.	<i>sil-né, sil-né</i>	<i>siln-é</i>	<i>siln-á</i>
I.	<i>siln-ými</i>	<i>siln-ými</i>	<i>siln-ými</i>
L.	<i>v siln-ých</i>	<i>v siln-ých</i>	<i>v siln-ých.</i>

Second Class, those of one ending :—
dnešní, belong to to-day.

	Singular.			Plural.
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	For all genders.
N.	<i>dnešní</i>	<i>dnešní</i>	<i>dnešní</i>	<i>dnešní</i>
G.	<i>dnešn-ího</i>	<i>dnešní</i>	<i>dnešn-ího</i>	<i>dnešn-ích</i>
D.	<i>dnešn-ímu</i>	<i>dnešní</i>	<i>dnešn-ímu</i>	<i>dnešn-ím</i>
A.	<i>dnešn-ího, dnešn-í</i>	<i>dnešní</i>	<i>dnešní</i>	<i>dnešn-í</i>
V.	<i>dnešn-í</i>	<i>dnešní</i>	<i>dnešní</i>	<i>dnešn-í</i>
I.	<i>dnešním</i>	<i>dnešní</i>	<i>dnešní</i>	<i>dnešn-ími</i>
L.	<i>ve dnešním</i>	<i>dnešní</i>	<i>dnešní</i>	<i>ve dnešn-ích.</i>

POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES.

These are formed from masculine nouns by the addition of
-ův, -ova, -ovo to the noun, thus :—

	Singular.	Plural.
N.	<i>králův syn</i> , the son of the king	<i>královi synové</i>
G.	<i>králova syna</i>	<i>králových synů</i>
D.	<i>královu synu</i>	<i>královým synům</i>
A.	<i>králova syna</i>	<i>královy syny</i>
V.	<i>králův synu</i>	<i>královi synové</i>
I.	<i>královým synem</i>	<i>královými syny</i>
L.	<i>o králově synu</i>	<i>o králových synech.</i>

In the case of animate things singular the accusative (like the genitive) ends in *-a*; in the case of inanimate it is like the nominative. In the plural the nom. and acc. end in *-í* if the noun is animate, and *-y* if it is inanimate.

	Singular.	Feminine.	Plural.
N.	<i>králova zahrada</i> , the king's garden		<i>královy zahrady</i>
G.	<i>královy zahrady</i>		<i>králových zahrad</i>
D.	<i>králově zahradě</i>		<i>králověme zahradám</i>
A.	<i>královu zahradu</i>		<i>královy zahrady</i>
V.	<i>králova zahrado</i>		<i>královy zahrady</i>
I.	<i>královou zahradou</i>		<i>královými zahradami</i>
L.	<i>v králově zahradě</i>		<i>v králových zahradách.</i>

	Singular.	Neuter.	Plural.
N.	<i>královo slovo</i> , the king's word		<i>králova slova</i>
G.	<i>králova slova</i>		<i>králových slov</i>
D.	<i>králova slovu</i>		<i>královým slovům</i>
A.	<i>královo slovo</i>		<i>králova slova</i>
V.	<i>královo slovo</i>		<i>králova slova</i>
I.	<i>královým slovem</i>		<i>královými slovy</i>
L.	<i>v králově slově</i>		<i>v králových slověch.</i>

If the noun ends in a vowel the termination *-ův*, *-ova*, *-ovo* is added; e. g. *vůdce*, the leader; *vůdcův*, of the leader.

Feminine nouns make the possessive adjective in *-in*, *-ina*, *-ino*, which are affixed to the stem, the final vowel being cast away, as *macecha*, the step-mother; *macešín*, belonging to the step-mother (favourite Slavonic mutation of *ch* into *š*. See p. 3). From adjectives of this description the proper names in Russian have been formed; but in Bohemian they are commonly diminutives, as *Jiřiček* (lit. Little George), or participial forms ending in *-l*, as *Pospíšil*.

The accusative of the singular in masculine adjectives applied to inanimate beings is like the nominative; applied to animate it is like the genitive. In the nominative plural the masculine adjective, when it is used with inanimate things, ends in *-e*, as *zelené duby*, the green oaks. Before *-i* in the plural of the adjectives *h* is changed into *z*, *ch* into *š*, *k* into *c*, and *r* into *ř*. Adjectives ending in *-ský* and *-cký* change into *-šti* and *-šti* in the plural, as *Stavové čeští z té příčiny, sešedše se v některém počtu v Praze*, the Bohemian Estates from that cause having assembled in a certain number in Prague.

The adjectives used as substantives are declined like *silný*, as *poddaný*, the subject; *hospodský*, the innkeeper; *polesný*, the forester. Feminine: *Panská*, the chambermaid; *krejcová*, the female tailor. Neuter: *dobré*, good; *mostové*, toll paid to go over a bridge.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

The comparative degree is formed by adding to the stem of the adjectives the terminations *-ějši* or *-ejší*, *-ší* or *-i*.

1. The ending *-ějši* (*-ejší*) is put after adjectives ending in *-lý*, *-rý*, *-mý*, *-ný*, as *rychlý*, quick, *rychlejší*; also after those in *-vý*, *-lý*, *-ský*, *-cí*, and some in *-bý*, *-pý*; when hard, the termination of the stem being changed into a soft consonant.

2. The ending *-ši*, before which *h* goes into *ž* and *ch* into *š*, is placed after the stem in adjectives in *-by*, *-dý*, *-hý*, *-chý*, as *tichý*, quiet, *tichší*; in the case of adjectives ending in *-ký*, *-eký*, *-oký*, the termination is cast aside in the comparative as in Russian (the *k* being a mere suffix to form the adjective), as *hluboký*, deep; *hlubší*, deeper. There are, however, a few instances where the *k* is preserved in a modified form, as—

<i>lehký</i> , easy	<i>lehčí</i> , easier
<i>měkký</i> , soft	<i>měkčí</i> , softer.

Some comparatives take both forms, as—

<i>čistý</i> , pure	<i>čistší</i> , <i>čistější</i> , purer
<i>tmavý</i> , dark	<i>tmavší</i> , <i>tmavější</i> , darker.

The following comparatives are altogether irregular:—

<i>dobrý</i> , good	<i>lepší</i> , better
<i>veliký</i> , great	<i>větší</i> , greater
<i>zlý</i> , bad	<i>horší</i> , worse
<i>málý</i> , little	<i>menší</i> , less
<i>dlouhý</i> , long	<i>delší</i> , longer.

The superlative is formed by prefixing the syllable *nej-* to the comparative, as *tvrđý*, hard; *tvrđší*, harder: *nejtvrđší*, the hardest.

The comparative and superlative adjectives are declined like *dnešní*.

<i>všechn</i> , all.		
Singular.		
Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N. <i>všechn</i>	<i>všechna</i>	<i>všechno, vše</i>
G. <i>všeho</i>	<i>všě</i>	<i>všeho</i>
D. <i>všemu</i>	<i>všěi</i>	<i>všemu</i>
A. { <i>všeho, animate</i> <i>všechn, inan.</i> }	<i>všechnu</i>	<i>všechno, vše</i>
I. <i>všim</i>	<i>všěi</i>	<i>všim</i>
L. <i>ve všem</i>	<i>ve všěi</i>	<i>ve všem.</i>
Plural.		
Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N. { <i>všichni</i> <i>všechny, inanimate</i> }	<i>všechny</i>	<i>všechna, vše</i>
G. <i>všech, všechněch</i>	} for all three genders	
D. <i>všem, všechnem</i>		
A. <i>všechny</i>		
I. <i>všemi</i>	<i>všechněmi</i>	} For all three genders.
L. <i>ve všech</i>	<i>ve všechněch</i>	

Besides *všechn*, *všechna*, *všechno* there are also found *všecek*, *všecken*, *všecka*, *všeckna*, *všecko*, *všeckno*, *veškeren* (all collectively, like Latin *cunctus*), *veškera*, *veškero*; plural, *veškeři* (*veškery*), *veškery*, *veškera*; acc. plural, *veškery*, *veškera*. All the rest declined like *silný*; thus, *veškerého*, *veškeré*, &c.

NUMERALS.

(1) CARDINAL.

1. jeden, jedna, jedno		6. šest.
2. dva, dvě.		7. sedm.
3. tři.		8. osm.
4. čtyři.		9. devět.
5. pět.		

11. jedenáct.
 12. dvanáct.
 13. třináct.
 14. čtrnáct.
 15. patnáct.
 16. šestnáct.
 17. sedmnáct.
 18. osmnáct.
 19. devatenáct.
 20. dvacet.
 21. dvacet jeden.
 22. dvacet dva.
 30. třicet.
 40. čtyřicet.
 50. padesát.

60. šedesát.
 70. sedmdesát.
 80. osmdesát.
 90. devadesát.
 100. sto.
 200. dvě stě.
 300. tři sta.
 400. čtyři sta.
 500. pět set.
 1,000. tisíc.
 2,000. dva tisíce.
 10,000. deset tisíc.
 100,000. sto tisíc.
 1,000,000. million.

(2) ORDINAL.

1st. prvn *or* prvý.
 2nd. druhý.
 3rd. třetí.
 4th. čtvrtý.
 5th. pátý.
 6th. šestý.
 7th. sedmý.
 8th. osmý.
 9th. devátý.
 10th. desátý.
 11th. jedenáctý.
 12th. dvanáctý.
 13th. třináctý.
 14th. čtrnáctý.
 15th. patnáctý.
 16th. šestnáctý.
 17th. sedmnáctý.

18th. osmnáctý.
 19th. devatenáctý.
 20th. dvacatý.
 21st. dvacaty první *or* jeden
 a dvacátý.
 22nd. dvacaty druhý *or* dva
 a dvacátý.
 30th. třicátý.
 40th. čtyřicátý.
 50th. padesátý.
 60th. šedesátý.
 70th. sedmdesátý.
 80th. osmdesátý.
 90th. devadesátý.
 100th. stý.
 200th. dvoustý.
 300th. třistý.

400 th . čtyřstý.	900 th . devítistý.
500 th . pětistý.	1,000 th . tisíci.
600 th . šestistý.	2,000 th . dvoutisící.
700 th . sedmistý.	10,000 th . desítisící.
800 th . osmistý.	100,000 th . stotisící.

The following are the chief rules for the use of the numerals:—
Jeden, jedna, jedno is declined like an adjective and agrees with its noun.

N. A. *dva, dvě* (the last for fem. and neut.)

G. L. *dvou*

D. I. *dvěma*.

In the same way is declined *oba*, both; *obě, obou, oběma*.

N. A. *tři*

G. *tří*

D. *třem*

I. *třemi*

L. *ve třech*.

N. A. *čtyři*

G. *čtyř*

D. *čtyřem*

I. *čtyřmi*

L. *ve čtyřech*.

It will be seen that the first four numerals are used as adjectives and agree with the nouns to which they belong, as *dvě jablka*, two apples; *čtyři mužové*, four men; *tři ženy*, three women. The rest of the numerals from *pět* onwards are treated as substantives and take the noun, which goes after them in the genitive plural, as *pět hrušek*, five pears. This, however, only applies to the numeral when used in the nominative and accusative cases; in all the other cases it is used as an adjective and agrees with its noun; e.g. *pěti hruškami*, with five pears.

From *pět* inclusive to *devět a devadesát* (99) the nominative, accusative, and vocative of the numerals are the same, the remaining cases take the suffix *-i*. *Sto* (100) and *tisíc* (1,000)

are substantives; *sto* is declined like *slovo* and *tisíc* like *hrač*. The dual is still found with *sto*, as *dvě stě* (200), *tři sta* (300), *čtyři sta* (400), *pět set* (500). *Tisíc* has in the gen. plur. *tisíc* and *tisíců*; *sto* generally remains undeclined, especially after prepositions; *před sto lety*.

THE HOURS OF THE DAY.

The following phrases will illustrate some of these:—

Půl třetí, half-past two.

Tri čtvrti na třetí, a quarter to three.

Čtyři minuty na čtvrtou, four minutes to four.

FRACTIONS OF NUMERALS.

půl, polovice, a half.

dvě půle, two halves.

třetina, a third.

dvě třetiny, two-thirds.

tři čtvrtě, three-fourths.

čtyři pětiny, four-fifths.

šestina, a sixth.

COLLECTIVE NUMERALS.

Such are *dvojice*, a couple; *pátero*, five together; *sedmero*, seven together, and others. It is no doubt from the point of view of the numbers being taken collectively that we are to explain the use of the neuter in the predicate when the subject expresses a quantity, as in the following instances: *Pět jablek mně zbylo*, I had five apples over. *Čtyři sta jich padlo*, four hundred of them fell. (Cf. Russian idiom.)

Distributives are expressed by the preposition *po*. *Dal jim po šestí zlatých*, he gave them six florins apiece.

THE PRONOUN.

PERSONAL.

Singular.

N. <i>já</i> , I	<i>ty</i> , thou
G. <i>mne-mě</i> , of me	<i>tebe-tě</i> , of thee
D. <i>mně-mi</i> , to me	<i>tobě-ti</i> , to thee
A. <i>mně-mě</i> , me	<i>tebe-tě</i> , thee
I. <i>mnou</i> , by me	<i>tebou</i> , by thee.
L. <i>ve mně</i> , in me	<i>v tobě</i> , in thee.

Plural.

N. <i>my</i> , we	<i>vy</i> , ye
G. <i>nás</i> , of us	<i>vás</i> , of you
D. <i>nám</i> , to us	<i>vám</i> , to you
A. <i>nás</i> , us	<i>vás</i> , you
I. <i>námi</i> , by us	<i>vámi</i> , by you
L. <i>v nás</i> , in us	<i>ve vás</i> , in you.

Singular.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.	<i>on</i> , he	<i>ona</i> , she	<i>ono</i> , it
G.	<i>jeho, ho</i> , of him	<i>jí</i> , of her	<i>jeho, ho</i> , of it
D.	<i>jemu, mu</i> , to him	<i>jí</i> , to her	<i>jemu, mu</i> , to it
A.	<i>jeho, ho, jej</i> , him	<i>jí</i> , she	<i>je</i> , it
I.	<i>jím</i> , by him	<i>jí</i> , by her	<i>jím</i> , by it
L.	<i>v něm</i> , in him	<i>v ní</i> , in her	<i>v něm</i> , in it.

Plural.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.	<i>oni</i> (<i>ony</i> , inanimate), they	<i>ony</i>	<i>ona</i>
G.	<i>jich</i>		
D.	<i>jím</i>		
A.	<i>je</i>		
I.	<i>jimi</i>		
L.	<i>v nich</i>		

} The same as the masculine.

The nominative *on* and its corresponding feminine and neuter forms are supplied to the pronoun of the third person from another source. (Cf. *onen, ona, ono*, that.) The rest of the cases are, as will be observed, cognate with the suffixes of the oblique cases of the definite adjective.

The form of the accusative neuter is peculiar, because in all other instances the accusative of the neuter is identical with the nominative. In Old Slavonic the nominative was *и, иже*.

The genitive case of the pronoun 3rd person *jeho* (ejus, *αὐτοῦ*) is used as a possessive, in the same way as in Greek and Latin, as *kňň jeho*, his horse, both for the masculine and neuter ; *jeji*, her (ejus, *αὐτῆς*), for the feminine, and *jejich* or *jich*, their (eorum, earum, *αὐτῶν*). With words in the plural the form *jejich* is used for the fem. sing. (ejus, *αὐτῆς*).

The oblique cases of the pronouns in the 3rd person take the letter *-n* when they are preceded by a preposition ; but this addition does not take place when the genitive *jeho, ji, &c.*, serves as a possessive pronoun, e.g. : *šlš sme do jeho zahrady*, we went into his garden ; but *šlš sme k nim*, we went to them.

THE REFLEXIVE PRONOUN.

N. —	A. <i>sebe, se</i>
G. <i>sebe, se</i>	I. <i>sebou</i>
D. <i>sobě, si</i>	L. <i>v sobě.</i>

The peculiarity of the reflexive pronoun in the Bohemian and other Slavonic languages is that it may be employed indiscriminately for all the three persons ; and the same may be said of the possessive adjective *svůj*, which is always reflexive, like the Latin *suus*.

The short forms *mi, ti, si* are enclitics, and cannot be used at the beginning of a sentence ; nor can they be employed after prepositions, as *u mne*, at my house ; *k tobě*, to thee.

The datives *ti* and *vám* can be used ethically, as in Latin and Greek. In the case of *ti* even the *i* is frequently ejected at

the end of words, *vimť = vim ti*, lit. I know for you, i.e. There you see, I know ¹.

Some of the prepositions are put with the pronoun of the 3rd person masc. in a contracted form. This is constantly found in Old Slavonic, and, of the modern languages, in Polish and Čech. The accusative is used in Čech mostly after the following prepositions: *pro, na, o, ve, za*; more rarely after *přes, skrz, nad, pod, před*; thus: *proň*, concerning him, on his account; *naň*, on him; *oň*, concerning him; *veň*, in him; *zaň*, behind him; *přeseň*, over him; *skrzeň*, through him; *nadeň*, upon him; *podeň*, under him; *předeň*, before him. Cf. the Polish *dlaň zeh*, &c.

POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

	<i>můj</i> , mine.		
	Singular.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.	<i>můj</i>	<i>má, moje</i>	<i>mé, moje</i>
G.	<i>m-ého</i>	<i>m-é, mojí</i>	<i>m-ého</i>
D.	<i>m-ému</i>	<i>m-é, mojí</i>	<i>m-ému</i>
A.	<i>m-ého</i> (inanimate things, <i>můj</i>)	<i>m-ou, m-ojí</i>	<i>m-é-, m-oje</i>
I.	<i>m-ým</i>	<i>m-ou, m-ojí</i>	<i>m-ým</i>
L.	<i>v m-ém</i>	<i>v mé, m-ojí</i>	<i>v m-ém.</i>
	Plural.		
N.	<i>m-oji (mí)</i> (inan. <i>mé, moje</i>)	<i>mé, m-oje</i>	<i>m-á, m-oje</i>
G.	<i>m-ých</i>	<i>m-ých</i>	<i>m-ých</i>
D.	<i>m-ým</i>	<i>m-ým</i>	<i>m-ým</i>
A.	<i>m-é, m-oje</i>	<i>m-é, m-oje</i>	<i>m-á, m-oje</i>
I.	<i>m-ými</i>	<i>m-ými</i>	<i>m-ými</i>
L.	<i>v m-ých</i>	<i>v m-ých</i>	<i>v m-ých.</i>

In this way are declined *tvůj*, thy; *svůj*, his.

¹ This seems to be cognate with such forms as Russian *пойдемте*, let us go.

naš, our.

	Singular.			Plural.
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	For all genders.
N. <i>naš</i>		<i>naš-e</i>	<i>naš-e</i> .	<i>naš-i, naš-e</i> (inan.); F. and N. <i>naše</i>
G. <i>naš-eho</i>		<i>naš-í</i>	<i>naš-eho</i>	<i>naš-ich</i>
D. <i>naš-emu</i>		<i>naš-i</i>	<i>naš-emu</i>	<i>naš-im</i>
A. <i>naš-eho</i> (animate) <i>naš</i> (inan.)		<i>naš-i</i>	<i>naš-e</i>	<i>naš-e</i>
I. <i>naš-im</i>		<i>naš-i</i>	<i>naš-im</i>	<i>naš-imi</i>
L. <i>v naš-im</i>		<i>v naš-i</i>	<i>v naš-em</i>	<i>v naš-ich</i> .

In the same way is declined *vaš*, your.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

ten, this.

	Singular.			Plural.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N. <i>te-n</i>		<i>ta</i>	<i>to</i>	<i>tí (ty)</i>	<i>ty</i>	<i>ta</i>
G. <i>to-ho</i>		<i>té</i>	<i>to-ho</i>	<i>těch</i>	} for all three.	
D. <i>to-mu</i>		<i>té</i>	<i>to-mu</i>	<i>těm</i>		
A. <i>to-ho (ten)</i>		<i>tu</i>	<i>to</i>	<i>ty</i>		<i>ty</i>
I. <i>tím</i>		<i>tou</i>	<i>tím</i>	<i>těmi</i>	} for all three.	
L. <i>v to-m</i>		<i>v té</i>	<i>v to-m</i>	<i>v těch</i>		

This may be further strengthened by the addition of *-to*, as *tento, tato, &c.*

Like *ten, tato*, is also declined *onen, ona, ono*, that; *onoho, oné, onoho, onomá, oní (ony), ony, ona, oněmi, oněch*; *no* may be added to this word to strengthen it.

týž, táž, též, the same, is declined like *slabý*, but the enclitic *ž* must be added to each of the cases. Cf. the Russian *жъ* and *же*. It is analogous to the Greek *γε*.

RELATIVE AND INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

(a) Interrogative.

kdo, who ; *co*, what.

N. <i>kdo</i> , who	<i>co</i> , what
G. <i>ko-ho</i> , of whom	<i>če-ho</i> , of what
D. <i>ko-hu</i> , to whom	<i>če-mu</i> , to what
A. <i>ko-ho</i> , whom	<i>co</i> , what
I. <i>kým</i> , by whom	<i>čím</i> , by what
L. <i>v ko-m</i> , in whom	<i>v če-m</i> , in what.

These two pronouns have no plural.

kteřý, -á, -é, who, which, is declined like *slabý*, *slabá*, *slabé*, and *či*, whose, like *dnešní*.

(b) Relative.

*jenž*¹, who, which.

Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N. <i>jenž</i>	<i>jež</i>	<i>jež</i>
G. <i>jehož</i>	<i>jíž</i>	<i>jehož</i>
D. <i>jemuž</i>	<i>jíž</i>	<i>jemuž</i>
A. <i>jehož</i> , <i>jejž</i>	<i>jíž</i>	<i>jež</i>
I. <i>jímž</i>	<i>jíž</i>	<i>jímž</i>
L. <i>v němž</i>	<i>v níž</i>	<i>v němž</i> .

Plural.

N. <i>již</i> , <i>jež</i> ²	<i>jež</i>	<i>jež</i>
G. <i>jichž</i>	} for all genders.	
D. <i>jímž</i>		
A. <i>jež</i>		
I. <i>jimiž</i>		
L. <i>v nichž</i>		

¹ Observe the permanent addition of the enclitic.² For inanimate things.

Before this pronoun an *n* is inserted after prepositions, as is the case with the personal pronoun of the third person, as already explained; the fact being that these forms are in origin identical with the third personal pronoun. As I have already said, *on, ona, ono*, &c., are borrowed. For the gen. fem. the longer form *jejíž* is sometimes used, and for the gen. plural of all genders *jejichž*.

As in many other European languages, the interrogatives *ktěry*, *kdo*, and *co* can also be used as relatives, and they are declined in exactly the same way¹.

co is frequently used for all three genders. It is sometimes colloquially used in a redundant manner, thus: *znáš toho člověka co sem s ním mluvil?* for *s nímž o ktěrym*, dost thou know the man with whom I spoke? This idiom is also found in Bulgarian, and elsewhere in the Aryan languages. Cf. ἦς εἶχε τὸ θυγάτριον αὐτῆς πνεῦμα ἀκάθαρτον.

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

1. *každý*, each (like *slabý*).
2. *žádný*², none; used mostly in the nominative.
3. *samý*, alone; *sam*, self.
4. *jiny*, another (alius). *druhý*, the other (alter).

To these may be added *ledakdo*, whosoever; *ledaco*, whatsoever; *ktěrykoli*, whoever.

¹ The enclitic *z* is sometimes added, as *ktěryž, kdož*. This is the same as the Russian *жъ, же*, which however in that language is not added to the word.

² The etymology of this word is very curious. It is connected with a root meaning 'to thirst,' and thus comes to mean something wanted. Cf. Polish, *žadén*, thus: *aby jemu poddání neprokazovali žádného poslušnosti*, that his subjects should show him no obedience.

THE VERB.

Before discussing the active and passive forms of the verb, and their different meanings when compounded with prepositions, I shall discuss the great difficulty of the Slavonic verbs—a difficulty which they all have in common, viz. their division into aspects. The researches of philologists have proved that these aspects are really to be found in the primitive forms of the Aryan verb. Professor Miklosich showed many instances in which such aspects can be traced in other languages (see p. 31).

The aspects are of two kinds—perfective and imperfective.

The perfective aspect denotes either that the action has been quite completed or that it will definitely cease. This aspect has no present tense, strictly speaking, but a present form with a future signification.

Many of the verbs belonging to this perfective aspect are compounded with a preposition; as *ponesu*, I will bring.

The imperfective verbs express an action that is not completed; but this may be conceived either (*a*) as merely continuing, or (*b*) as repeated at various times. The verbs of the first class are called ‘durative,’ those of the second class ‘iterative.’

The perfective verbs are again subdivided, either (*a*) as they denote completion without regard to the duration of the action, e.g. to do a thing in one or more acts (unconditional perfective verbs); or (*b*) with reference to the duration of the action (conditional perfective verbs). In the last case the action may be either (*a*) one the beginning and end of which are simultaneous, as *klesnoul*, he sank; *padnoul*, he fell; the action being done rapidly,—once for all as it were: these verbs are called by Miklosich ‘momentaneous,’ and by Russian grammarians the aspect is called the ‘perfect aspect of unity’; or (*b*) the action may not have a simultaneous beginning and end; and this class is further subdivided into—(1) cases where

the action, the completion of which is predicated, is a continuous one, or (2) cases where it is repeated at various times. The first of these Miklosich calls 'durative perfective,' the second 'iterative perfective'¹.

The aspect of a verb can only be determined by a reference to one of the six conjugations to which the verb belongs, due regard being paid as to whether a preposition is prefixed or not. The scheme given on p. 34 will assist the student in the matter.

There are three moods in Čech: the infinitive, indicative, and imperative; and three tenses: the present, future, and past.

Each aspect is regularly conjugated according to its own moods and tenses.

The prepositional prefixes are very important, and the leading ones are therefore given here, for they have great influence upon the aspects of a verb, as the reader will see by looking at the scheme of verbs and their aspects on p. 34.

do implies the accomplishment of an action, the carrying of it out to the end, as *dočetl sem knihu*, I have read the book through.

na denotes action upon something, as *namazati máslo na chléb*, to spread butter upon bread. *na* also frequently has the sense of doing a thing to satiety, as *nemůžeme se mu nadiviti*; we cannot sufficiently wonder about him.

¹ Corresponding examples may be found in other languages. The following example from the excellent Polish grammar of the late Professor Smith, of Copenhagen (*Grammatik der polnischen Sprache*, Berlin, 1845), will illustrate the aspects. Thus in Greek:—

Imperf. τυγχάνω, ἐτύγγανον (stem τύγγαν-).

Perf. τεύξομαι, ἔτυχον (stem τυχ-).

Imperf. γιγνώσκω, ἐγινώσκον (stem γιγνώσκ-).

Perf. γνώσομαι, ἔγνω (stem γνω-).

We thus see that the imperfective aspect furnishes to the Slavonic verb (1) the present, (2) the imperfect tenses; while the perfective aspect furnishes (3) the future in the simple form as opposed to the compounded and artificial future, (4) the aorist.

nad denotes upon, as *nadepsati*, to write upon. Sometimes with this preposition the reflexive is used in the dative, *tudy sem si nadešel*, here I have come¹.

o and *ob* express round an object; *osekati*, to cut round. *v* disappears after *b*, as *obléci*, to draw on.

od denotes from, separation, as *odtrhnouti*, to tear away.

po gives a sense of diminution, as *poposedni dál*, sit down a little longer.

pod expresses underneath, as *podkopati*, to dig underneath.

pro denotes carrying a thing through — *prolomiti*, to break through; also loss by this action, as *prohráti*, to gamble away one's property, and sometimes to begin, as *promluviti*, to begin speaking.

pře denotes repetition and moving from one place to another, as *přeskočiti*, to leap over; *přešiti*, to sew over again. Connected with the first meaning are such expressions as *přečísti*, to translate into Bohemian. Cf. also *matka svou přežila*, she survived her mother.

před signifies before, as *předběhnouti*, to outstrip in flight; *předložiti*, to lay before.

při signifies drawing near to an object, as *přistoupiti*, to approach.

roz denotes separation, as *rozkousnouti*, to bite in twain.

s denotes together, as *sehnati*, to hunt together; sometimes direction downwards from above, as *spadnouti*, to fall from.

sou signifies together. It is said to be for *spolu*, as *souhlasiti*, to agree.

u gives the idea of thoroughness to the verb, as *uběhati*, to make oneself tired by running.

¹ This *si* (which reminds us of such expressions as *ipse sibi* in Latin) can be paralleled in other Slavonic languages. Cf. the Bulgarian азъ ѿмамъ парѣ при себе си, I have the money with me (Morfill, *Short Bulgarian Grammar*, p. 23). It is analogous to such expressions as the Russian женщина прекрасная собою, where the pronoun is quite superfluous.

v denotes motion into, as *vejíti*, to go in.

vy denotes motion from an object, out of, as *vyřezati*, to cut out.

vz denotes motion upwards, as *vzrůsti*, to grow up.

z gives an idea of thoroughness, as *zhynouli*, to perish utterly. *s* also is sometimes used in the same way, as *spaliti*, to burn entirely (*comburare*).

za implies going beyond the mark, *zablouditi*, to wander astray. Sometimes (probably from the idea of the incompleteness of the action) it implies, to do a thing a little, as *zaspřívati*, to sing a little.

We sometimes find a verb compounded with two and even three prepositions, as *po-od-ložiti*, to lay aside a little; *na-pro-ná-sledovati*, to follow a person till one is weary of it.

The following are the original personal suffixes of the verb :—

	Singular.	Plural.
1.	-m	-m
2.	-š	-te
3.	-t	-nt.

The *-m* of the first sing. pres. is found in verbs III, IV, and V (1), according to the ensuing paradigms¹. The nasal of the third person plural has become *-ou*.

The connecting vowels are *e* and *o*; e.g. perf. part. passive *pleten*, woven. The verbs which we shall find afterwards in the class marked B have no connecting vowel in the present; as *vi-m*, I know; *dá-m*, I give; *ji-m*, I eat; *js-em*, I am.

The conjugation of the Bohemian verb will be here arranged according to the system of Miklosich. Before, however, giving

¹ The Slovak language, already described in the preface, has *-m* throughout the verbs. It may here be stated that the oldest forms of Čech show a dual in the verbs, as also in the nouns. These venerable remains, as they may well be styled, are found also in the Upper and Lower Sorbisch languages and Slovenish.

the several classes of verbs, it will be as well to quote his analysis of the Slavonic verb generally.

Each verb has two stems, firstly, the infinitive stem, and secondly, the present stem. It is upon the principle of the infinitive stem that the verbs are here arranged.

(1) THE INFINITIVE STEM.

In this the verbs are divided into two classes, according as they add verbal suffixes immediately to the root, or add them to a root or a nominal or verbal stem by means of one of the following suffixes (connecting vowels): *nq*¹, *é*, *i*, *a*, *ua* (*ova*). Putting these two together we may say that verbal stems are divided into six classes:—

- (a) Stems without a connecting vowel.
- (b) *nq*-stems.
- (c) *é*-stems.
- (d) *i*-stems.
- (e) *a*-stems.
- (f) *ova*-stems.

We thus have the verbs divided into six chief classes. These again may be regarded from the point of view of—(1) those which have no preposition prefixed; (2) those which have a preposition prefixed. With reference to their aspects, the verbs are thus arranged under the six classes:—

I. Without the prefix of a preposition—

(a) As a rule imperfective, some durative. There are a few perfective, which must be learned by practice.

(b) Perfective, a few inchoative-durative (i. e. expressing the beginning of an action which lasts).

¹ The *q*, borrowed from the Polish, is here adopted from Miklosich as a means of expressing the nasal, which originally existed.

(c) Durative ; when derived from nouns, inchoative-durative.

(d) Durative ; a few iterative, some perfective.

(e) Those of the first subdivision are durative, if derived from nouns (*verba denominativa*) ; iterative, when derived from verbs (*verba deverbativa*) ; those of the second, third, and fourth subdivisions of primary verbs are durative.

(f) Durative if *verba denominativa* ; iterative when *verba deverbativa*.

II. With the prefix of a preposition—

(a) Perfective.

(b) Perfective.

(c) In both subdivisions perfective.

(d) Perfective, if durative.

(e) Durative verbs become perfective ; iterative verbs become durative and some perfective.

(f) *Verba denominativa*, already durative, become perfective ; *verba deverbativa*, already iterative, become durative¹.

1. The suffix of the infinitive is *-ti*, as *tvoriti*, to make.

2. Only rarely is the supine found which has the infinitive suffix, minus *i*, as *spat*, to sleep, *dormitum*.

3. The first past participle active originally had the suffix *-s*. This however has fallen off, leaving the ending *-v*, unless declined, when it becomes *-vši*.

4. The suffix of the second past participle active is *-l* ; this occasionally drops off from lax articulation, as *prilèh*, he ran up ; *spad*, he fell down ; *utek*, he escaped. Cf. Russian *везъ, несъ, рекъ*.

The second past participle with the addition of the present tense of the substantive verb is used as the ordinary way of

¹ The student must continually keep this table in mind. It is impossible to master this difficult part of Slavonic grammar at the outset. It must be acquired by reading the language ; but it is better to have the *ratio* of the verb at once explained.

expressing the past tense in Bohemian, the gender being preserved in the singular ; thus—

děkoval jsem, I have thanked
děkoval jsi, thou hast thanked
děkoval (jest), he has thanked,

with *a* for the feminine and *o* for the neuter ;

And in the plural thus—

děkovali jsme, we have thanked
děkovali jste, ye have thanked
děkovali jsou, they have thanked,

with *-y* for fem. and *-a* for neuter.

This is now the only past tense in use, the imperfect and aorist having disappeared. The various shades of meaning of the past tense are expressed by the aspects.

5. The suffix of the past participle passive is *-n* or *-t*. The form in *-t* is more common in the first and second conjugations.

6. The aorist which existed in Old Slavonic and also in Old Bohemian has now completely disappeared.

(2) THE PRESENT STEM.

1. The present suffix is *-e*, which is lost in some verbs.

2. Imperative. The second singular in *-i*, the second plural like the present ; the accent being on the first syllable. The characteristic *-i* of the imperative singular is lost in the plural (cf. Russian *сгавь*) ; and the *i* in the plural is shortened or omitted, as *vid'te*, look ye (cf. Russian *позвольте*).

3. The imperfect which existed in Old Čech has completely disappeared in the modern language.

4. Present participle active. The original suffix of this participle was *-nt*. (Cf. Ger. *gehend*.) If it is used in its short form *t* falls out in *Auslaut* ; and *n* is amalgamated with the preceding vowel, becoming *ž*, *i*, or *a*, *ou* ; if, however, the

longer form with *i* at the end is used *t* becomes *c* from *tj*, as *hledě*, *hledící*, seeing; *jsouci*, being.

5. The present participle past, which in so many of the Slavonic languages has disappeared, is represented in Čech only by fragments, e.g. *vědom*, known; *znám*, celebrated.

A. CONJUGATION WITH THE PRESENT SUFFIX.

FIRST CLASS. STEMS WITHOUT CONNECTING VOWEL.

(1) *Those in d and t.*

plésti, to weave.

a. Inf. stem, *plet*. Inf. *plés-ti*. Past part. act. I. *plet*. Past part. act. II. *plet-l*. Past part. pass. *plet-e-n*.

β. Pres. stem, *plet-e*.

	Singular.	Plural.
Pres. 1.	<i>plet-u-</i>	<i>plet-e-me</i>
2.	<i>plet-e-š</i>	<i>plet-e-te</i>
3.	<i>plet-e</i>	<i>plet-ou.</i>
Imp. 1.	—	<i>plet-me</i>
2.	<i>plet</i>	<i>plet-te</i>
3.	<i>plet</i>	<i>plet-te.</i>

Pres. part. active, *plet-a*.

vlásti (to rule), *pasti* (to fall), and *sjesti* (to sit), although existing in O. C. are lost in the modern language, and their place supplied by verbs in the second conjugation, e.g. *vládnú*, *pádnu*, *sédnu*. *jdu*, to go, borrows its past from the root *šed*, which is identical with *chod* in *choditi*, to go. The *d* has been ejected. (Cf. Polish *szedl*.) Sometimes we find the form *išel* with a parasitic *i*, as is the case in so many of the Slavonic languages. Past part. act. *šed*: *přešed přež hory*, having gone over the mountains.

(2) *Stems which end in s.*

nésti, to bring.

a. Inf. stem, *nes*. Inf. *nés-ti*. Past part. act. I. *nes*. Past part. act. II. *nes-l*. Past part. pass. *nes-e-n*.

β. Pres. stem, *nes-e*.

	Singular.	Plural.
Pres. 1.	<i>nes-u</i>	<i>nes-e-me</i>
2.	<i>nes-e-š</i>	<i>nes-e-te</i>
3.	<i>nes-e</i>	<i>nes-ou.</i>
Imp. 1.	—	<i>nes-me</i>
2.	<i>nes</i>	<i>nes-te</i>
3.	<i>nes</i>	<i>nes-te.</i>

Pres. part. act. *nes-a*.

(3) *Stems which end in b and v.*

[These are wanting in modern Bohemian, most of the verbs belonging to them being found in the fourth conjugation.]

(4) *Stems which end in h and k.*

péci, to bake.

a. Inf. stem, *pek*. Inf. *péci*. Past part. act. I. *pek*. Past part. act. II. *pek-l*. Past part. pass. *peč-e-n*.

β. Pres. stem, *pek-e*.

	Singular.	Plural.
Pres. 1.	<i>pek-u</i>	<i>peč-e-me</i>
2.	<i>peč-e-š</i>	<i>peč-e-te</i>
3.	<i>peč-e</i>	<i>pek-ou.</i>
Imp. 1.	—	<i>pec-me</i>
2.	<i>pec</i>	<i>pec-te</i>
3.	<i>pec</i>	<i>pec-te.</i>

Pres. part. act. *pek-a*.

Important verbs connected with this class are *moci*, to be able, *mohu*; *léci*, to flow, *teku*; *vléci*, to draw, *vleku*; *žáci*, to burn, *žhu*, *žžeš*, *žže*, *žžeme*, *žžete*, *žhon*¹. This verb, however, is only used when compounded with *roz*. Of *řáci*, to speak, only *řku*, I speak, *řkou*, they speak; the imperative forms *rci*,

¹ Cf. Rⁿ

rceme, rcete; and the past part. act. II. *řekl-a-o* are found; for the rest of this verb we must go to conjug. II. *řeknu*.

(5) *Stems which end in m and n.*

ža-ti (*žít-ti*), to reap.

a. Inf. stem, *žn*. Inf. *žíti*. Past part. act. I. *ža-v*. Past part. act. II. *ža-l*. Past part. pass. *žat*.

β. Pres. stem, *žn-e*.

	Singular.	Plural.
Pres. 1.	<i>žn-u</i>	<i>žn-e-me</i>
2.	<i>žn-eš</i>	<i>žn-e-te</i>
3.	<i>žn-e</i>	<i>žn-ou</i> .
Imp. 1.	—	<i>zně-me</i>
2.	<i>žn-i</i>	<i>zn-ě-te</i>
3.	<i>žn-i</i>	<i>zn-ě-te</i> .

Pres. part. act. *žn-a*.

Many of these verbs are more often used in the form belonging to the second conjugation. The appearance of the *n* and *m* in the present stem is to be explained by the latent nasal which existed in O. S. and is still preserved in Polish and in its cognate language or dialect, Kashubish. Thus we have *po-číti*, to begin, *po-čnu*; *píti*, to stretch, *pnu*; *úíti*, to hack, *tnu*; *žíti*, to reap, *žnu*; *douti*, to blow out, *dmu*; *jíti*, to take hold of, *jmu*. (Cf. Russian ять, only used in compounds.) So also Čekh, *vzítí*, to take, *v-z-ítí* (cf. Russian взять), *vezmu*, I will take; Imperative—*vezmi*, *vezměme*, *vezměte*; *vzal-a-o jsem*, I have taken. Cf. also *jal se první spisovati dějiny země česke*, first betook himself to write the history of the Bohemian land.

(6) *Stems which end in r and l.*

mříti, to die.

a. Inf. stem, *mr*. Inf. *mř-ít-ti*. Past part. act. I. *mř-e-v*. Past part. act. II. *mř-e-l*. Past part. pass. (wanting).

β. Pres. stem, *mř-e*.

	Singular.	Plural.
Pres. 1.	<i>mr-u</i>	<i>mř-e-me</i>
2.	<i>mř-e-š</i>	<i>mř-e-te</i>
3.	<i>mř-e</i>	<i>mr-ou.</i>
Imp. 1.	—	<i>mř-e-me.</i>
2.	<i>mř-i</i>	<i>mř-e-te</i>
3.	<i>mř-i</i>	<i>mř-e-te.</i>

Pres. part. act. *mr-a*.

To this group belong the verbs *mlíti*, to grind, *melu*; *tríti*, to rub, *tru*, &c.

(7) *Stems which end in a vowel.*

bíti, to strike.

a. Inf. stem, *bí*. Inf. *bí-ti*. Past part. act. I. *bí-v*. Past part. act. II. *bí-l*. Past part. pass. *bí-t*.

β. Pres. stem, *bí-j-e*.

	Singular.	Plural.
Pres. 1.	<i>bí-j-i</i>	<i>bí-j-e-me</i>
2.	<i>bí-j-eš</i>	<i>bí-j-e-te</i>
3.	<i>bí-j-e</i>	<i>bí-j-ě.</i>
Imp. 1.	—	<i>bí-me</i>
2.	<i>bí</i>	<i>bí-te</i>
3.	<i>bí</i>	<i>bí-te.</i>

Pres. part. act. *bí-j-e*.

Some verbs of this conjugation take also a form in *m*, as *znam*. Verbs of this conjugation are—*píti*, to drink, *píji*; *žíti*, to live, *žiji*; *pěti*, to sing, *pěji*; *krýti*, to cover, *kryji*; *mýti*, to wash, *myji*; and *slouti*, to have the reputation, to be called, *sluji* (cf. Greek κλύειν). Besides *sluji* we sometimes get in the present *slovu*¹.

So also *plouti*, to swim; pres. *pluj*; perf. *plul* and *ploul sem*;

¹ This illustrates such a form as ЖИВУ as present of verb ЖИТЬ, to live.

fut. *popluji*: *zouti*, to take off the boots; *sezuji*, I will take off my boots: *kouti*, to forge: *douti*, to blow; in pres. both *duji* and *dmu*; perf. *dul sem*; fut. *naduji*¹.

SECOND CLASS. STEMS WITH CONNECTING VOWEL.

nǎ-STEMS (Čech, *nou*).

zdvihnouti, to lift up.

a. Inf. stem, *zdvihnu*. Inf. *zdvihnou-ti*. Past part. act. I. *zdvihnu-v*. Past part. act. II. *zdvihnu-ť*. Past part. pass. *zdvihnu-t*.

β. Pres. stem, *zdvihn-e*.

	Singular.	Plural.
Pres. 1.	<i>zdvihn-u</i>	<i>zdvihn-e-me</i>
2.	<i>zdvihn-e-š</i>	<i>zdvihn-e-te</i>
3.	<i>zdvihn-e</i>	<i>zdvihn-ou</i> .
Imp. 1.	—	<i>zdvihn-ě-m</i>
2.	<i>zdvihn-i</i>	<i>zdvihn-ě-le</i>
3.	<i>zdvihn-i</i>	<i>zdvihn-ě-te</i> .

Pres. part. act. *zdvihn-a*.

Many of these verbs have a tendency to omit the syllable *nu*, not only, as in Russian, in past part. act. II, but also in past part. passive². Thus, *strhly se opet různice*, disputes again broke out. This seems especially the case with verbs which have a consonant before the *nu*. Many verbs are found in this conjugation in Bohemian which belong to the first in the other Slavonic languages.

THIRD CLASS. STEMS WITH CONNECTING VOWEL ê.

First Group. *uměti*, to understand.

a. Inf. stem, *umě*. Inf. *umě-ti*. Past part. act. I. *umě-v*. Past part. act. II. *umě-l*. Past part. pass. *umě-n*.

¹ Vide supra, influence of prepositions in forming aspects of verbs.

² One is reminded of the *vu* which drops out of certain Greek verbs, as *δεικνυμι*, to show; first aor. *είδειξα*.

β. Pres. stem, *umě-j-e*.

	Singular.	Plural.
Pres. 1.	<i>um-í-m</i>	<i>um-í-me</i>
	2. <i>um-í-š</i>	<i>um-í-te</i>
	3. <i>um-í</i>	<i>umě-j-í.</i>
Imp. 1.	—	<i>umě-j-me</i>
	2. <i>umě-j</i>	<i>umě-j-te</i>
	3. <i>umě-j</i>	<i>umě-j-te.</i>

Pres. part. act. *um-ě-j-e*.

Second Group. *hořeti*, to burn.

a. Inf. stem, *hoře*. Inf. *hoř-e-ti*. Past part. act. I. *hoře-v*.
Past part. act. II. *hoře-l*. Past part. pass. (wanting).

β. Pres. stem, *hoři-e*.

	Singular.	Plural.
Pres. 1.	<i>hoří-m</i>	<i>hoří-me</i>
	2. <i>hoří-š</i>	<i>hoří-te</i>
	3. <i>hoří</i>	<i>hoří.</i>
Imp. 1.	—	<i>hoř-me</i>
	2. <i>hoř</i>	<i>hoř-te</i>
	3. <i>hoř</i>	<i>hoř-te.</i>

Pres. part. act. *hoř-e*.

The following are irregular: *chtíti*, to wish, *chci*, *chtěl sem*; *míti*, to have, *mám*, *měl sem*¹; *viděti*, to see, *vidím*, *viděl sem*.
Imp. *viz.*, *báti se*, to be afraid, *bojím se*, *bál sem se*; *stati*, to stand, *stojím*, *stal sem*, *stoj*.

FOURTH CLASS. i-STEMS.

chvaliti, to praise.

a. Inf. stem, *chvali*. Inf. *chváli-ti*. Past part. act. I. *chváliv*.
Past part. act. II. *chváli-l*. Past part. pass. *chvál-e-n*.

¹ *míti* and *jíti* (first conj. 5) are connected, being two aspects *ИМАТЬ*, *ИМѢТЬ*; in *jíti* the nasal *m* has been absorbed. See Miklosich, iii. 386.

β. Pres. stem, *chvali-e*.

	Singular.	Plural.
Pres. 1.	<i>chválk-m</i>	<i>chválk-me</i>
2.	<i>chválí-s</i>	<i>chválí-te</i>
3.	<i>chvál-í</i>	<i>chvál-í.</i>
Imp. 1.	—	<i>chval-me</i>
2.	<i>chval</i>	<i>chval-te</i>
3.	<i>chval</i>	<i>chval-te..</i>

Pres. part. act. *chvále*.

FIFTH CLASS. a-STEMS.

First Group. *dělati*, to do.

a. Inf. stem, *děla*. Inf. *děla-ti*. Past part. act. I. *děla-v*.
Past part. act. II. *děla-l*. Past part. pass. *dělá-n*.

β. Pres. stem, *děla-j-e*.

	Singular.	Plural.
Pres. 1.	<i>dělá-m</i>	<i>dělá-me</i>
2.	<i>dělá-š</i>	<i>dělá-te</i>
3.	<i>dělá</i>	<i>děla-j-i.</i>
Imp. 1.	—	<i>děle-j-me</i>
2.	<i>děle-j</i>	<i>děle-j-te</i>
3.	<i>děle-j</i>	<i>děle-j-te.</i>

Pres. part. act. *děla-j-e*.

Second Group. *psa*, to write.

a. Inf. stem, *psa*. Inf. *psá-ti*. Past part. act. I. *psa-v*. Past
part. act. II. *psa-l*. Past part. pass. *psá-n*.

β. Pres. stem, *piši-e*.

	Singular.	Plural.
Pres. 1.	<i>piš-i</i>	<i>piš-e-me</i>
2.	<i>piš-e-š</i>	<i>piš-e-te</i>
3.	<i>piš-e</i>	<i>piš-í.</i>

	Singular.	Plural.
Imp. 1.	—	<i>piš-me</i>
2.	<i>piš</i>	<i>piš-te</i>
3.	<i>piš</i>	<i>piš-te.</i>

Pres. part. act. *piše.*

In this way are conjugated *dýchati*, to breathe; *skákati*, to leap.

Third Group. *brati*, to take.

a. Inf. stem, *bra*. Inf. *brá-ti*. Past part. act. I. *bra-v*. Past part. act. II. *bra-l*. Past part. pass. *bra-n*.

β. Pres. stem, *ber-e*.

	Singular.	Plural.
Pres. 1.	<i>ber-u</i>	<i>ber-e-me</i>
2.	<i>ber-e-š</i>	<i>ber-e-te</i>
3.	<i>ber-e</i>	<i>berou.</i>
Imp. 1.	—	<i>ber-me</i>
2.	<i>ber</i>	<i>ber-te</i>
3.	<i>ber</i>	<i>ber-te.</i>

Pres. part. act. *ber-a.*

In this way are conjugated (*po*)*slati*, to send, (*po*)*šlu*; *dráti*, to tear, *deru*; *práti*, to wash clothes, *peru*; so also *kláti*, to pierce.

	Singular.	Plural.
Pres. 1.	<i>koli</i>	<i>kúleme</i>
2.	<i>kúleš</i>	<i>kúlete</i>
3.	<i>kúle</i>	<i>koli</i>

lhati, to lie.

Pres. 1.	<i>lhu</i>	<i>lžeme</i>
2.	<i>lžeš</i>	<i>lžeme</i>
3.	<i>lže</i>	<i>lhou.</i>

and *zváti*, *zovu*, to call.

Fourth Group¹. *přáti*, to wish.

a. Inf. stem, *pře-ja*. Inf. *přáti*. Past part. act. I. *přá-v*.
Past part. act. II. *přá-l*. Past part. pass. *přá-n*.

β. Pres. stem, *pře-j-e*.

	Singular.	Plural.
Pres. 1.	<i>pře-j-i</i> or <i>u</i>	<i>pře-j-e-me</i>
	2. <i>pře-j-eš</i>	<i>pře-j-e-te</i>
	3. <i>pře-j-e</i>	<i>pře-j-í</i> .
Imp. 1.	—	<i>pře-j-me</i>
	2. <i>pře-j</i>	<i>pře-j-te</i>
	3. <i>pře-j</i>	<i>pře-j-te</i> .

Pres. part. act. *pře-j-e*.

SIXTH CLASS. OVA (u-a) STEMS.

milovati, to love.

a. Inf. stem. *milova*. Inf. *milova-ti*. Past part. act. I. *milova-v*.
Past part. act. II. *milova-l*. Past part. pass. *milová-n*.

β. Pres. stem, *milu-j-e*.

	Singular.	Plural.
Pres. 1.	<i>milu-j-i</i>	<i>milu-j-e-me</i>
	2. <i>milu-j-eš</i>	<i>milu-j-e-te</i>
	3. <i>milu-j-e</i>	<i>milu-j-í</i> .
Imp. 1.	—	<i>milu-j-me</i>
	2. <i>milu-j</i>	<i>milu-j-te</i>
	3. <i>milu-j</i>	<i>milu-j-te</i> .

Pres. part. act. *milu-j-e*.

B. CONJUGATION WITHOUT THE PRESENT SUFFIX.

(1) *věd*, to know.

	Singular.	Plural.
Pres. 1.	<i>vim</i>	<i>ví-me</i>
	2. <i>vi-š</i>	<i>ví-te</i>
	3. <i>vi</i>	<i>věd-í</i> .

¹ In this group the present stem ends in a vowel.

BOHEMIAN GRAMMAR

	Singular.	Plural.
Imp. 1.	—	<i>věz-me</i>
2.	<i>věz</i>	<i>věz-te</i>
3.	<i>věz</i>	<i>věz-te.</i>

věz represents old form *vežd*, and *vězte, vedite*.

(2) *dad*, to give.

	Singular.	Plural.
Pres. 1.	<i>dá-m</i>	<i>dá-me</i>
2.	<i>dá-š</i>	<i>dá-te</i>
3.	<i>dá</i>	<i>dá-j-š.</i>
Imp. 1.	—	<i>de-j-me</i>
2.	<i>de-j</i>	<i>de-j-te</i>
3.	<i>de-j</i>	<i>de-j-te.</i>

(3) *jad*, to eat.

	Singular.	Plural.
Pres. 1.	<i>jí-m</i>	<i>jí-me</i>
2.	<i>jí-š</i>	<i>jí-te</i>
3.	<i>jí</i>	<i>jed-š.</i>
Imp. 1.	—	<i>jez-me</i>
2.	<i>jez</i>	<i>jez-te</i>
3.	<i>jez</i>	<i>jez-te.</i>

The pres. part. act. is *jeda*.

(4) *jes*, to be.

	Singular.	Plural.
Pres. 1.	<i>js-e-m</i> or <i>sem</i>	<i>js-me</i>
2.	<i>j-si</i>	<i>js-te</i>
3.	<i>jes-t, je</i>	<i>js-ou.</i>

VOICE, MOOD, TENSE, &C.

The modern Bohemian language has only one past tense, although the old language had both the imperfect and the aorist. But the apparent poverty is compensated by the

aspects. The past tense now employed is what is really the second active past participle. Hence it is inflected as a participle in the singular and plural, in both these numbers the gender being also marked. This participle must be accompanied by the present tense of the verb *býti*, to be; thus *dal sem*, I gave. In the third person singular and plural the substantive verb is not used unless it be for emphasis. The tense formed by these verbs in conjunction is called a perfect. The pluperfect is expressed by the second past participle of the verb, and the perfect of the verb *býti*; thus *byl jsem volal*, I had called.

The future is expressed in two ways—(a) by the present tense of perfective verbs, e.g. *půjdu*, I will come; or (b) the employment of an imperfective verb in the infinitive with the present tense of the verb *býti*, *budu*, as *budu skákati*, I shall leap,

The *futurum exactum* is wanting in modern Čech.

THE CONDITIONAL MOOD.

This is expressed by the use of the aorist *bych* (a form which has survived from Old Bohemian), thus:—

volal bych, I might have called,
volal bys, thou mightest have called,
volal by, he might have called;

and in plural, *volali bychom*, *byste*, *by*. Thus: *pilně vynashažiti se, by země byla zase uvedena v pokoj*, to actively busy himself that the country should again be brought into tranquillity. The verb is sometimes affixed to an adverb or conjunction, as *kdybys*. *Míti*, to have, in conjunction with the infinitive, has the signification of shall or should, as *co to má býti?* what should this be? *měl jste jej viděti*, you should have seen him; and *měl jsem*, yes, I should have. *Míti* is thus conjugated:—

	Singular.	Plural.
Pres. 1.	<i>mám</i>	<i>máme</i>
2.	<i>máš</i>	<i>máte</i>
3.	<i>má</i>	<i>mají.</i>

In future use of *míti* Bohemian resembles Old Slavonic.

It will be observed that there are no independent forms of the third person of the imperative in the singular or plural.

Every verb has a verbal noun which is a neuter in *i*, thus: *rozjímání*, reflection; *naučení*, instruction; *pití*, drinking; *úmrtí*, death.

The passive voice is expressed by (1) the reflexive pronoun with the active voice¹, as *mluví se*, it is said; *píše se*, it is written; or (2) by the union of the past participle passive with the substantive verb, *psáno jest*, it is written. *Potupně nazývan jest od ně knížetem sedlským*, he was called contemptuously by them the prince of the rustics. Where possible an active form seems preferred to a passive, thus: *dal koně svého přivázati ku koňům*, had his horse fastened to the horses.

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

vece, it is said; a fragment of an old verb *veceti*, to say².

prý, it is said; connected with *praviti*, to tell. Cf. colloquial use in Russian of *гурть* for *говорятъ*, they say. *Byla prý úplně podobna svému oci*, she was exactly like her father, they say.

děje se, it happens; *dějí se věci*, things occur.

třeba, potřeba, potřebí, it is necessary; *nelze*, it is impossible.

zdá se, it seems.

stmívá se, it is getting dark; *připozdívá se*, it is getting late.

As in the other Slavonic languages, personal verbs are often used impersonally. Cf. *na tisíce vesnic bylo spáleno a zpusťeno*, the villages were burnt and devastated by thousands.

Ji k počtě se mluvilo vzdy německy, out of respect to her they always spoke German. *Nescházelo přitom aspoň soukromých písemných prací o právě zemském*, but there were not wanting at least privately written works about the law of the land.

¹ This is most in accordance with the genius of the Slavonic languages.

² Cf. Bulgarian *викамъ*, I call out; also the old name of the Council at Novgorod, *вече*.

REFLEXIVE VERBS.

It has already been said that the reflexive is the favourite method of expressing the passive in the Slavonic languages. These verbs are recognized by the use of the reflexive pronoun, either in the accusative *se* or the dative *si*, as *vezu se*, I go (lit. I carry myself), or *všímám si*, I take notice (lit. I take to myself). Some verbs are only found in a reflexive form, as *bojím se*, I am afraid. The use of the dative with reflexives will remind the student of the Latin *sibi* used redundantly, as *ipse sibi*. Cf. also the Bulgarian *Азъ ѣмамъ парѣ при себе си*, I have the money with me.

The position of the reflexive is somewhat unrestricted. It may go either before the verb or after it, as *já se vezu*, I betake myself, or *vezu se*. In the compound tenses such forms as *vezl jsem se*, appear to be more frequent, and if in the same clause there be two reflexive verbs one of the reflexive pronouns is generally omitted.

IRREGULAR VERBS.

For the convenience of the student I have added a list of some of the more common irregular verbs. They can be easily arranged under their proper conjugations.

Infinitive.	Present tense.	Past tense.
<i>bráti</i> , to take	<i>beru</i>	<i>bral</i>
<i>břísti</i> , to wade	<i>bředu</i>	<i>bředl</i>
<i>bůstí</i> , to pierce	<i>bođu</i>	<i>bodl</i>
<i>čísti</i> , to read	<i>čtu</i>	<i>čel</i>
<i>čítí</i> , to begin	<i>čnu</i>	<i>čal</i>
<i>dráti</i> , to split	<i>deru</i>	<i>dral</i>
<i>dřiti</i> , to flay	<i>dřu</i>	<i>dřel</i>
<i>jetí</i> , to journey	<i>jeđu</i>	<i>jel</i>
<i>jítí</i> , to go	<i>jđu</i>	<i>šel</i>
<i>jítí</i> , to take	<i>jmu</i>	<i>jal</i>

Infinitive.	Present tense.	Past tense.
<i>hnáti</i> , to drive	<i>ženu</i>	<i>hnal</i>
<i>hnísti</i> , to press	<i>hnětu</i>	<i>hnětl</i>
<i>housti</i> , to play music	<i>hudu</i>	<i>hudl (houdl)</i>
<i>klasti</i> , to place	<i>kladu</i>	<i>kladl</i>
<i>krásti</i> , to steal	<i>kradu</i>	<i>kradl</i>
<i>kvésti</i> , to bloom	<i>kvetu</i>	<i>květl</i>
<i>lháti</i> , to lie	<i>lžu</i>	<i>lhal</i>
<i>másti</i> , to confuse	<i>matu</i>	<i>matl</i>
<i>méstí</i> , to sweep	<i>metu</i>	<i>mětl</i>
<i>mřiti</i> , to die	<i>mru</i>	<i>mřel</i>
<i>péci</i> , to bake	<i>peku</i>	<i>pekl</i>
<i>píti</i> , to fasten	<i>pnu</i>	<i>pial</i>
<i>plésti</i> , to plait	<i>pletu</i>	<i>pletl</i>
<i>práti</i> , to hit	<i>peru</i>	<i>pral</i>
<i>přísti</i> , to spin	<i>předu</i>	<i>předl</i>
<i>přiti se</i> , to dispute	<i>přu se</i>	<i>přel se</i>
<i>říci</i> , to say	<i>řku</i>	<i>řekl</i>
<i>růsti</i> , to grow	<i>rostu</i>	<i>rostl</i>
<i>rváti</i> , to tear	<i>rvu</i>	<i>rval</i>
<i>rváti</i> , to roar	<i>řvu</i>	<i>řval</i>
<i>ssáti</i> , to suck	<i>ssu</i>	<i>ssal</i>
<i>státi se</i> , to become	<i>stane se</i>	<i>stalo se</i>
<i>stříci</i> , to guard	<i>střehu</i>	<i>střahl</i>
<i>střítí</i> , to cut	<i>střihu</i>	<i>střihl</i>
<i>střítí</i> , to cover	<i>střu</i>	<i>střel</i>
<i>štváti</i> , to hunt	<i>štvu</i>	<i>štvál</i>
<i>téci</i> , to flow	<i>teku</i>	<i>tekl</i>
<i>títi</i> , to hew	<i>tnu</i>	<i>tal</i>
<i>tlouci</i> , to strike	<i>tluku</i>	<i>tloukl</i>
<i>třásti</i> , to shake	<i>třesu</i>	<i>třásl</i>
<i>třítí</i> , to rub	<i>třu</i>	<i>třel</i>
<i>vesti</i> , to lead	<i>vedu</i>	<i>vedl</i>
<i>vléci</i> , to draw	<i>vleku</i>	<i>vlekl</i>

Infinitive.	Present tense.	Past tense.
<i>vrcti</i> , to throw	<i>vrhu</i>	<i>vrhl</i>
<i>vřítí</i> , to seethe	<i>vru</i>	<i>vřel</i>
<i>zábsít</i> , to be cold	<i>zebe</i>	<i>zablo</i>
<i>zváti</i> , to invite	<i>zovu (zvu)</i>	<i>zval</i>
<i>ždítí</i> , to press	<i>ždmu</i>	<i>žďal</i>
<i>žáci</i> , to kindle	<i>žhu</i>	<i>žehl</i>
<i>žítí</i> , to reap	<i>žnu</i>	<i>žal</i>
<i>žráti</i> , to devour	<i>žeru</i>	<i>žral</i>
<i>žvati</i> , to chew	<i>žvu</i>	<i>žval.</i>

jíti, to take, becomes in composition *-ejmouti*, as *se-jmouti*, *od-ejmouti*, to take away. The *m* in the present tense and the lengthened form of the infinitive are lost in the infinitive in *-iti*, which stands for an original nasal. In the compounds we have a parasitic *n* with the past tense, which is put in for euphony, as *odňal*, he took away. The same form is found in Old Slavonic, and indeed in all the Slavonic languages.

čítí, to begin, is always found compounded, as *začal*, he began. Observe the present *začnu*, which is explained by the latent nasal, Russian *начать, начну*.

moci, to be able, *mohu*; past tense, *mohl*.

mnítí, to think; past tense, *mněl*.

Some of the tenses of these verbs are here given in detail. They belong to the oldest verbs in the language.

jeti, to go.

Present.		Imperative.
1. <i>jeđu</i>	<i>jedeme</i>	2. <i>jeď</i>
2. <i>jedeš</i>	<i>jedete</i>	1. <i>jeďme</i>
3. <i>jede</i>	<i>jedou</i>	2. <i>jeďte.</i>

Past tense (perfect), *jel jsem.*

	<i>jíti</i> , to go.	
Present.		Imperative.
1. <i>jdu</i>	<i>jdeme</i>	2. <i>jdí</i>
2. <i>jdeš</i>	<i>jdete</i>	1. <i>jděme</i>
3. <i>jde</i>	<i>jdou</i>	2. <i>jděte.</i>

-Past tense, *šel, šla, šlo, jsem, &c.*

For the explanation of this form see First Conjugation, First Group, p. 37.

státi se, to become.

Present with future signification : *stanu se.*

Imperative : *staň se.*

Past tense : *stal jsem se.*

Thus : *stal se zároveň knížetem*, he became prince at once.

For the present is used the cognate form *stavam.*

spáti, to sleep ; *spim.*

Present : *spím, spíš, spě, spíme, spíte, spí.*

Imperative : *spí, spěme, spěte.*

Past : *spal jsem.*

Future : *budu spáti.*

díti, to say, is only used in the present—*dím, dělš, děl, díme, díte, dějš* (cf. O. S. дѣти, *ponere, dicere*). The impersonal use of this verb in the latter sense has already been discussed. Cf. also Russian *дескать*.

vari, take care (borrowed from the German).

THE SUBSTANTIVE VERB, *býti*, to be.

	<i>Present.</i>	
Singular.		Plural.
<i>jsem</i> ¹		<i>jesme</i>
<i>jsi</i>		<i>jiste</i>
<i>jest (je)</i>		<i>jsou.</i>

¹ For *ty jsi* we sometimes get *tys*, for *kdy jsi*, *kdes*, and *že jsi*, *žes*.

The past tense is formed by the use of the participle *byl* with the present tense, which is regularly declined *byl, byla, byli* in the singular, *byli, byly, byla* in the plural, thus: *byl sem, byla jsi, byli jsme*. The third person present of the verb 'to be' is generally omitted, for *byl jsi, byla jsi, bylo jsi* we find *byls, bylas, bylos*.

Future.(Used as an auxiliary¹.)

Singular.	Plural.
1. <i>budu</i>	<i>budeme</i>
2. <i>budeš</i>	<i>budete</i>
3. <i>bude</i>	<i>budou.</i>

IMPERATIVE.

1. *bud'*
2. *bud' me*
3. *bud'te.*

The conditional is formed in the same way as is explained in the other verbs.

I should be, &c.	We should be, &c.
<i>byl-a-o</i> { <i>bych</i>	<i>byli-y-a</i> { <i>bychom</i>
{ <i>bys</i>	{ <i>byste</i>
{ <i>by.</i>	{ <i>by.</i>

PARTICIPLES.

Present.

Singular.	Plural.
<i>jsa</i> , being (masc.)	<i>jsouce</i> , being.
<i>jsouc</i> , being (fem. and neut.)	

Past.

Singular.	Plural.
<i>byv</i> , having been (masc.)	<i>byvše</i> , having been.
<i>byvši</i> (fem. and neut.)	

¹ This is really the present tense of *byti* and has a future signification; *jsem* belongs to another verb.

*Future*¹.

Singular.	Plural.
<i>buda</i> , about to be (masc.)	<i>budouce</i> .
<i>budouc</i> (fem. and neut.)	

Inflected Forms.

<i>jsoucí</i> , being		<i>byvší</i> , having been
<i>budoucí</i> , about to be.		

VERBAL NOUN.

bytí, n. existence².

PARADIGM OF THE TENSES OF A REGULAR VERB.

volati, to call.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Singular.	Plural.
1. <i>volám</i>	<i>voláme</i>
2. <i>voláš</i>	<i>voláte</i>
3. <i>volá</i>	<i>volají</i> .

Perfect.

Singular.	Plural.
1. <i>volal jsem</i>	<i>volali jsme</i>
2. <i>volal jsi</i>	<i>volali jste</i>
3. <i>volal-a-o (jest)</i>	<i>volali-y jsou</i> .

Pluperfect.

Singular.	Plural.
1. <i>byl jsem volal</i>	<i>byli-y jsme volali-y</i>
2. <i>byl jsi volal</i>	” ”
3. <i>byl-a-o (jest), volal-a-o</i>	” ”

¹ This is the only verb which in Slavonic has a future participle.

² Verbal substantives are rarely used in the plural.

Future.

Singular.	Plural.
1. <i>budu volati</i>	<i>budeme volati</i>
2. <i>budeš volati</i>	<i>budete volati</i>
3. <i>bude volati</i>	<i>budou volati.</i>

IMPERATIVE.

<i>volej</i> , call thou		<i>volejme</i> , let us call
		<i>volejte</i> , call ye.

PARTICIPLES (UNDECLINED).

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>
<i>volaje</i>	<i>volav.</i>
<i>volajíce</i> , calling	

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

Perfect.

Singular	Plural.
<i>volal bych</i> , I might call	<i>volali bychom</i>
<i>volal bys</i>	<i>volali byste</i>
<i>volal by</i>	<i>volali by.</i>

Pluperfect.

Singular.	Plural.
<i>byl bych volal</i> , I might have called	<i>byli bychom volali</i>
	<i>byli byste volali</i>
<i>byl bys volal</i>	<i>byli by volali.</i>
<i>byl by volal</i>	

PARTICIPLES (DECLINED).

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	
<i>volající</i> , calling		<i>volavší</i> , having called.

Past Passive.

Undeclined . . .	<i>volan</i> , called
Declined . . .	<i>volaný</i> .

VERBAL NOUN.

volání, the act of calling.

(For Participles, see further, p. 36.)

PARTICIPLES.

Active.

(1) The present participle when undeclined ends in *e*, *a*¹; when declined, *ci* or *uci*, as *smutek zmírající přírody dýchal se stromů, ze žloutnoucích listů*, the melancholy of dying nature breathed from the trees, from the yellowing leaves². Cf. the Russian participle ending in -ущ, used colloquially; thus, we have *volající*, calling; *učící*, teaching; *píící*, drinking.

(2) The past active ending in *-v*, or in a protracted form *-vši* for fem. and neut., and *-vše* for all three genders in the plural.

Passive.

(1) The present participle passive is wanting in Čech.

(2) The past participle ends either in *n* or *t*. In the first and second conjugations it is more often the latter, vide *supra*. Sometimes we get both of these forms, as *zdvížen* and *zdvihnul*, moved.

(2) UNINFLECTED.

THE ADVERB.

Adverbs formed from adjectives generally end in *-ě*, as *slabě*, weakly. Some end in *-o*, as *široko*, in a broad manner. They admit of degrees of comparison: those in *ě* make *-ěji*, which is added to the stem, *k* being changed into *č*, *h* into *ž*, *ch* into *š*, *sk* into *št*, and *ck* into *čt*. Adverbs which end in *-o* make the comparative in *-ě*, which is contracted from *-ěje*. In the case of

¹ Of these there are feminine and neuter forms, thus: *nesa*, bringing, fem. and neut. *nesouc*, plur. *nesouce*; *umeje*, understanding, fem. and neut. *umejíc*, plur. *umějíc*.

² For declension, cf. *dnešní*.

-ko, *-eko*, and *-oko* being the final syllables of the adverb, they are entirely omitted, as *široko*, broad; *šire*, more broadly; *daleko*, far, *dál(e)*¹.

These latter comparatives can also end in *-ěji*, but the one-syllabled termination is the most common. The superlative is formed by the prefixing of the syllable *nej-* to the comparative, as *lépe*, better; *nejlépe*, in the best way.

The following are quite irregular:—

dobře, well; *lépe* or *líp*.

zle, badly; *hůř(e)*.

málo, little; *méně* or *míň*.

mnoho, much; *víc(e)*.

dlouho, long; *déle*.

brzy or *brzo*, soon; *dřív(e)* or *spís(e)*.

Adverbs are formed from various cases of adjectives with or without a preposition.

(a) With the genitive, as *do cela*, entirely; *z řídka*, seldom.

(b) The locative, *v nově*, newly (and to this case may be assigned all the adverbs in *-ě* used without a preposition).

(c) The accusative without a preposition. Here belong all the adverbs in *-o*, as *často*, frequently; *vysoko*, high. These correspond to the Latin adverbs in *-um*; e.g. *parum*.

(d) With the instrumental: *mnohem*, by much; *malem*, soon, in a little time. Cf. *bez mála*, almost, within a little.

Adverbs of manner end sometimes in *-ský* and *-cký*, and are sometimes preceded by *po*; but the latter is more often omitted. The case here is really the dative which has been weakened from *-u*, thus: *mluviti po česku* or *po česky* or *česky*, to speak Čech; and the same with other adjectives relating to countries².

¹ The *k* of the positive is merely a letter used in the formation of adjectives.

² For a parallel instance in Bulgarian see Morfill's *Grammar*, p. 65.

Interrogative adverbs are *kde*, where; *odkud*, whence; *kam*, whither; *kudy*, *kady*, in what way, *qua*; *kdy*, when; *kolikrát*, how many times; *jak*, how.

Relative adverbs: *kde*, where; *odkud*, whence; *kam*, whither; *kudy*, in what way; *kdy* or *když*, when; *kolikrát*, how many times; *jak*, as.

Demonstrative adverbs: *tu*, there; *zde*, here; *tam*, *onde*, thither; *odtud*, *odonud*, from there, from yonder; *sem*, here; *onam*, thither; *tudy*, *tady*, in this way, *hac*; *onady*, in that way, *ea*; *tenkráte*, now, then; *tehdy*, then; *nyni*, *ted*, now; *tolikrát*, so many times; *tak*, *takto*, so; *tím* (*oním*) *spůsobem*, this or that way.

Indefinite: *nekde*, somewhere; *kdekoli*, wherever; *odněkud*, from any place; *odkudkoli*, from any place whatsoever; *někam*, any whither; *kamkoli*, in any direction soever; *někudy*, in some way, *aliqua*; *kudykoli*, in any way whatsoever; *několikrát*, several times; *níkrát*, no times; *kolikrátkoli*, how many times soever; *nějak*, somehow; *jakši*, *jakkoli*, in what way soever.

Many adverbs are cases of nouns, and to form these the instrumental is chiefly used, e. g. *během dvou století*, in the course of two centuries.

The negative adverb *ne* is used in Bohemian where it would not be required in English¹, as *prve než k tomu došlo*, before it came to this.

Two negatives do not make an affirmative, as *já nikdy, to věř, neměl toho v lásce člověka*, believe me, I never liked that man. Bohemian has, in common with the other Slavonic languages, the idiom of adding *ne* to an adjective and reversing its meaning, thus, *nepřátelský*, hostile (cf. the Greek idiom *εὐσημόνων γυναικῶν οὐκ ὀλίγαι*).

¹ Cf. such expressions in French as the following:—Cet homme est plus heureux qu'on ne pense.

We also find the negatives compounded with the verbs, which is occasionally the case in the other Slavonic languages:—

<i>nejsem</i> , I am not		<i>nejme</i> , we are not
<i>nejsi</i> , thou art not		<i>nejste</i> , you are not
<i>není</i> , he is not		<i>nejsou</i> , they are not ¹ .

After the verbs *zapověděti*, to forbid; *brániti*, to restrain; *zdržovati*, to hold back, and *vysířihati*, to warn, the conditional is used with the negative *aby ne*; so also after verbs expressing fear, denial, dispute, and similar ideas.

PREPOSITIONS.

A. Prepositions with the Genitive.

bez, without; before two consonants *beze*, as *bez přátel*, without friends; *beze všeho spojení*, without any communication.

do, to, as *navrátiti do Čech*, to bring back to Bohemia.

dle, after, according to, as *dle jména jeho*, according to his name; *dle starodávné pověsti*, according to the ancient tradition.

podle(ě), *vedle(ě)*, close by, along, as *podle řeky*, along the river.

kolo, *okolo*, *kolem*, *vůkol*, around.

kromě, except, as *kromě knihy*, except the book.

krom toho, besides that.

od(ě), by, from, as *jsem chvalen od pana učitele*, I am praised by the teacher; *od východa*, from the east; frequently used to express the agent, like our 'by'; *uprázdněná od nich místa*, the places deserted by them; *u*, at, by, as *stojím u vody*, I stand by the water².

z(e), out of, as *ze školy*, out of the school; *v bitvě ze všech nejkrvavější*, in a battle the most sanguinary of all³.

¹ Cf. Chaucer, I n'am; there n'is.

² It is identical with *v(ve)*, about which see a little further on. The identity of these prepositions is quite conspicuous in the Serbian language.

³ The genitive is also used after many adverbs which are used as prepositions, as *blisko*, near; *drahně*, much, &c.

B. *With the Dative.*

k (*ke, ku*), to, for, as *ku přebývání*, for his dwelling; *k dvoru císařovu*, to the emperor's court.

proti, against, opposite to, as *střhlo se proti němu opět vzbouření*, the storm rose anew against him.

naproti, to meet.

C. *With the Accusative.*

mimo, passing by, as *mimo dům jíti*, to go past the house.

ob, round, as *ob dům*, around the house.

přes(e), over, across, as *utekl přes hranici Římskou*, he escaped over the Roman frontier.

pro, on account of, as *pro vítězství toto*, on account of that victory; *skrz(e)*, through, as *skrz naději*, through hope.

D. *With the Locative.*

při, by, at the side of, as *při řeci Dunaji*, by the river Danube.

E. *With the Accusative and Locative.*

o with the accusative, concerning, as *o matku jde*, the matter has to do with the mother; *o stůl sem se uhodil*, I knocked myself against the table; *přišel o oko*, he lost his eye. With the locative: *o tom*, concerning that.

Also *drama o dvou dejstvích*, a play in two acts.

v (ve) with the accusative, into, as *v dům jíti*, to go into the house.

v (ve) with the locative, in, as *v nejpečnějších krajinách*, in the most beautiful countries.

na, with the accusative, motion towards; like the Latin *in* with accus., as *na poledne*, towards the south; *slepý na obě oči*, blind of both eyes.

na with the locative, on (Lat. *in* with the ablative), as *na poledni*, in the south; *bitva na Bílé Hoře*, the battle of the

White Mountain; *musil se obrátiti na úlék*, he must betake himself to flight. Cf. also the idiomatic expression, *na ráňě*, as *První bylo na ráňě Polsko*, Poland was the first to suffer.

F. *With the Accusative and Instrumental.*

mezi, among, implying motion, takes the accusative: *přjdu mezi sestry své*, I shall go among my sisters.

mezi, among, implying rest, with the instrumental: *usadíí se mezi jinými Keltý*, to establish themselves among the other Kelts.

nad(e), motion over, with the accusative: *plamen ohně šlehal až nad naši dům*, the flame of the fire came even to our house.

nad, upon, with the instrumental (rest), as *každý kmen měl nad sebou svého vojvodu*, each family had its leader over it.

pode(e), motion under, with the accusative (cp. Lat. *sub*): *padl sem pod stůl*, I fell under the table.

pod(e), rest under (Lat. *sub* with the ablative), as *drželi pod jařmem*, they kept under the yoke.

před(e), motion before, with the accusative, as *stoupl jsem si před matku*, I came into the presence of my mother.

před(e), rest before, as *před večerem*, before the evening².

G. *With the Genitive, Accusative, and Locative.*

u with the genitive signifies by, at, as *u nich*, among them.

u with the accusative, for *v*, motion into, as *spadl sem u vodu*, incidi in aquam.

u with the locative, for *v* (*in* with abl., Lat.), as *byl sem u vodě* = fui in aqua³.

¹ Observe redundant *si*, spoken of on p. 49.

² Readers familiar with the Latin and Greek prepositions will easily understand these various uses.

³ See previous reference on this point to the Serbian language (p. 59, note 2).

H. *With the Dative, Accusative, and Locative.*

po is used with the dative in modern Bohemian only with adverbs: *po česku mluvíti*, to speak Čech; or the *u* has become weakened into *y*, as *po česky*, or the *po* is entirely omitted, as *anglicky*, English. (Cf. the rule in Bulgarian.)

po with the accusative, up to (with the idea of motion), as *zapadl sem do sněhu až po kolena*, I fell into the snow up to my knees.

po with the locative, up and down, all over, as *běhám po pokoji*, I go about the chamber. (Cf. Russian путешествовать по Поезия.) *Vdova po Vaclavu II*, widow of Wenceslaus II. Also after, as *po krátkem odporu*, after a short resistance.

I. *With the Genitive, Accusative, and Instrumental.*

se with the genitive denotes motion from, as *se všech stran*, from all sides.

s(e) with the accusative means about the size of (cf. Russian), as *dej mi s hrstí třesěň*, give me about a handful of cherries.

s(e) with the instrumental means with, as *s jistotou*, with certainty; *s okolními národy*, with the surrounding peoples.

za with the genitive denotes the time during which a thing is done, as *za mládí svého*, during the time of his youth.

za with the accusative signifies motion behind, as *za vstáhovaly až za Dunaj*, they stretched out beyond the Danube; also of a woman marrying a man, as *provádání Gertrudy za Hermana*, the marriage of Gertrude with Hermann.

za with the instrumental signifies rest behind, as *za řekou*, behind the river.

CONJUNCTIONS.

<i>a, i,</i> and	<i>pakli,</i> if
<i>také, taky,</i> also	<i>ledva, sotva,</i> hardly
<i>těž,</i> also	<i>tolik,</i> so far
<i>že,</i> that	<i>jednak,</i> partly
<i>ale,</i> but	<i>sice,</i> indeed
<i>či</i> or <i>čili,</i> or	<i>ač,</i> although
<i>neb,</i> or ; also <i>nebo, aneb, anebo</i>	<i>poněvadž,</i> because
<i>bud',</i> whether, or ; <i>bud' s volí</i>	<i>protože,</i> since
<i>bud' proti vůli,</i> whether	<i>jelikož,</i> whereas
with or against the wish	<i>že,</i> that
<i>nebo,</i> or	<i>tedy</i> } hence
<i>ni-ni</i> } neither, nor	<i>tudiž</i> }
<i>ani-ani</i> }	<i>pročež,</i> on which account
<i>jestli,</i> if	<i>následovně,</i> in consequence.

INTERJECTIONS.

Many are rather sounds than words, as *ach, aj,* to express pain ; *hej, hoj,* to call attention, &c. ; but many parts of verbs are used as interjections, as *vari* (see p. 52), beware ; *nechť,* for aught I care. *Toť bohdá nebude,* God grant that never.

III. SYNTAX

THE CONCORDS.

ALTHOUGH *pět* and the succeeding numbers are, if we investigate their origin, really feminine substantives, yet the verb with them is used in the neuter singular in the past tense, as *pět vran letělo přes zahradu*, five crows flew over the garden; *devět hodin udeřilo*, nine o'clock struck. So also neuter, frequently used where verb precedes; *zde bylo zima*, here it was winter.

THE NOUN.

A noun in apposition to another is put in the same case, as *zemřel mohutný císař Jindřich VI ve Vlašch*, the powerful emperor Henry VI died in Italy; *měl jediného spojence vévodu bavorského*, he had one ally, the Duke of Bavaria.

The genitive case is used:—

(a) After the verb when it has a partitive sense, as *dej mu chleba, nalej mu vína*, give him some bread, pour out some wine for him.

(b) After the verb when there is a negative in the sentence, as *nemáme peněz*, we have no money; and in Čech two negatives do not make an affirmative, as *před tím nikdy nebývalo*, before this never occurred.

(c) To designate the year, the month, and the day of the month, as *tehož roku žil v Praze*, this year he lived in Prague; *dne jedenáctého dubna roku tisíc osm set devadesátého osmého*, April 11th, 1898.

(d) After cardinal numerals, from *pět* onwards, when they are in the nominative and the accusative.

(e) After adverbs of quantity, as *drahně času*, much time.

(f) After adjectives, such as *znalý*, acquainted; *chtivý*, greedy; *hoden*, worthy; *mocen*, mighty; *plný*, full; *zbáven*, free from, and many others.

(g) With verbs expressing fear, shame, expectation, touch; verbs compounded of *do* and *na*; verbs implying necessity, or to stand in need of, as *potřebovati*, and the impersonal *potřeba* (*opus est*). Also the genitive of price, as *kníha stojí pouhých 40 kr.*, the book costs exactly 40 kreuzers; *týkající se domácích věcí*, touching domestic matters.

(h) The genitive expresses quality, as *Ulisses, král převýborné výmluvnosti*, Ulysses, a king of wonderful eloquence; *Vladislav, jsa muz dobrého srdce*, Vladislav, being a man of good heart.

(i) After adjectives in the comparative, unless *než* is inserted, when the nominative is used, as *množili se rychleji než jich předchůdci*, they increased more quickly than their predecessors.

(j) The genitive of the material is generally used in Čech with a preposition, as *kostel od kamene*, a church built of stone.

There are other uses which are familiar and need not be recapitulated here, e.g. the genitive in connexion with a noun of which it is the attribute, as *ten¹ jest přítel mého otce*, that man is the friend of my father.

The dative is used—

(a) To imply possession, as *jest mně něco*, I have something. In the Slavonic languages, as in Latin, we shall see how frequently it is used for the genitive.

¹ In *ten¹* we have a particle added for emphasis, *ten-ť*. It is also sometimes added to verbs, as *vydálť*, he gave out.

(b) To signify advantage or disadvantage, as *budeš-li moudrý, sobě moudrý budeš*, if you are wise, you will be wise for yourself.

(c) Many adjectives govern the dative, of which the following may be mentioned: *roven*, equal; *příjemný*, agreeable; *cizí*, strange; *nebezpečný*, dangerous; *snadný*, easy; *nesnadý*, difficult; *dlužen*, indebted; *vítán*, welcome; *milosrden*, merciful; *vzácný*, rare, dear, &c. &c.

(d) The following verbs among others take the dative: *děkovati*, to thank; *klaněti se*, to entreat; *libiti se*, to please; *chyběti*, to be wanting (*deesse*); *podobati se*, to be like; *blížiti se*, to approach; *věřiti*, to believe; *povídati*, to say; *odolati*, to resist; *modliti se*, to pray; *zjeviti se*, to appear to; *zahynuli ná vypravě této smrti*, they died (lit. underwent death) on this expedition; *dobyl sobě Moravy*, he gained Moravia for himself. So also *král Václav odňal bratrovi polovici země*, King Wenceslaus took from his brother half of the land.

The accusative is used—

(a) As the ordinary case after the verb.

(b) To denote extent or dimension both of time and place, as *tři míle běžeti*, to run three miles; *jsem 20 roků star*, I am twenty years old. There is also what has been called the accusative of exclamation with *hle*, lit. look upon, and *na, nate*, there you have it! Cf. Russian, Вотъ тебѣ на.

The instrumental case is used to express the instrument or agent.

There is also what has been appropriately called the predicative use of the instrumental. This is a great feature of the Slavonic languages, and is employed where a surname or quality is assigned to an object; it expresses the appellation which we apply to a thing, the regard in which we hold it, some modification which it has undergone, e.g. *Cicero slul otcem vlasti*, Cicero was called the father of his country; *učiněn jest opatem*,

he was made an abbot. So also the instrumental is used in comparisons, as *leti bystrým sokolem*, he flies like a swift falcon. Many verbs govern an instrumental, as *trhnouti*, to tear; *proslaviti se*, to make oneself celebrated; *zapáchatí*, to smell; *slouti*, to be called; *naplniti*, to fill, &c. Among these may be included verbs signifying to rule, as *aby císař nemecký mohl rozkazovati oběma*, that the German Emperor might rule both.

The locative is only used with prepositions.

THE VERB.

The substantive verb in the present tense is generally omitted; *bylo* and *nebylo* are used impersonally, it was, or was not,—once on a time; *nebylo žádného jednání*, there was no union. *měl* from *miti* is used in the sense of ought, as *měl tam býti*, he ought to have been there.

THE SEQUENCE OF THE TENSES.

This seems to be observed more accurately in Bohemian than in other Slavonic languages (e. g. Russian), thus: *Král Jan stál se zástupem svým pozadu; i vidouce páni čeští, kteří s ním tu byli, že jest bitva ztracena, radili aby hleděl zachovati život svůj a s jinými nastoupil cestu zpátečnou*, King John was behind his supporters, and the Bohemian lords who were with him, seeing that the battle was lost, made effort that he should take care to preserve his life and retire with the others.

PURPOSE.

This is generally expressed by the use of *abych* with the past tense, as *jsem na tom abych mluvil*, I am just going to speak. *abych* is regularly inflected, as *člověk jí, aby žil*, man eats that he may live; *obstrčení jazyka českého zařízeními císaře Josefa nedovedlo toho, aby v národě samém vyhasla přirozená láska ke své mluvě mateřské*, the attack on the Bohemian language by the

decrees of the Emperor Joseph did not lead to the result that in the people themselves the love of their native language was quenched.

Sometimes purpose is expressed by the supine, thus: *chodíme do školy se učit*, we go to the school to learn (*učit*, sup. from *učiti*); *přišel jsem s Vami si pohrát*, I have come to play with you (*pohrát*, from *pohráti*).

Each verb has its verbal noun, but the infinitive may also be used absolutely, as *odkudž viděti jest daleko široko*, from which a wide expanse may be seen. Cf. also the following uses of the infinitive: *bylo viděti*, one could see; *jest se obávati*, one must fear.

Dáti with the infinitive means to permit, as *nedal mu k sobě přistoupiti*, he did not allow him to approach him.

The infinitive is also frequently used with *není*, *nebylo*, *nemám*, *neměl jsem*, as *není kde lůžko postavit*, there is no place where one can put the bed; *nemá zař koupiti*, he has no money to buy with.

The infinitive takes with it an adjective or participle in the dative or in the instrumental, as *býti šleďrým*, to be bountiful; *chtěti býti bohatu*, to wish to be rich.

ORDER OF WORDS IN A SENTENCE.

This is in the main the simple and natural one; the verb is not necessarily placed at the end of a sentence. The adjective generally precedes the noun, but sometimes follows; e. g. *mezitím zemřela Karlovi mladá manželka jeho Blanče, i vstoupil po sedmi měsících ve druhé manželství*, in the meantime Blanche, the young wife of Charles, died, and after seven months he entered upon a second marriage. The abundance of inflexions allows a certain licence of position, thus: sometimes the accusative case is put before the verb which governs it, as *vydali rozkaz, jimž . . . arcibiskupa a opata vypořáděti ze země*, they

issued a decree whereby they banished the archbishop and the abbot from the land. In this sentence we may also see the inclination of the Slavonic language to avoid a passive form. In English we should say: the archbishop, &c., were banished. See remarks on passive, p. 48. In both Bohemian and Polish authors we frequently feel that German syntax underlies their sentences. But the involved style is not necessary, it is rather contrary to the genius of the language. Thus the following seems a simple and direct sentence: *tu pani čeští, ještě nedavno slibivše Přemyslovi ze za něj chť životy své nasádivi, prve než přišlo k bitvě, zrádně jej opustili a dali se k biskupovi*, there the Bohemian lords, who not long before had promised Přemysl that they would lay down their lives for him, before that they came into battle, traitorously deserted him and surrendered themselves to the bishop. In the second clause it will be observed that the verb is at the end, which however is not necessary.

The student should notice the use of the neuter form *přišlo*, which is thoroughly Slavonic and has been previously explained; also that the sequence of tenses is violated in *chti*.

PASSAGES TO BE TRANSLATED INTO BOHEMIAN

EXERCISE I.

The number of the parochial clergy increased during those times as remarkably in consequence of the founding of so many new German villages and the increase and spread of the towns. Where now with a population of five millions we reckon in Bohemia and the county of Glatz something like 1,900 parish churches, there were (of them) in the time of the Emperor Charles about 2,100; of inhabitants there were hardly quite three millions.

number, *počet*.

parochial, here use *světstský*, i.e.

belonging to the world, as opposed to the regulars.

to increase (itself), *rozmnožiti se*, 4th conj.

omit 'during' and put 'times' (*doba*, f.) in the acc., in which case duration of time is generally put.

as remarkably, *rovněž znamenitě*. Observe *ž* used for emphasis (see p. 29).

in consequence of, *následkem* (gen.).

so many, *toliko*.

new, *nový*.

a village, *vesnice*, s.f.

German, *německý* (fr. root *němý*, dumb, because the Germans

were the first foreigners with whom the Slavs came into contact).

and, *a*.

the increase, *rozmnožení*, s.n.

the expansion, *rozšíření*, s.n.

a city, *město*.

where, *kdež*.

now, *nyni*.

with a population, *při obyvatelstvu*.

five, *pět*. Remember after *pět* numerals declined like substantives.

million, *million*, s.m.

to count, *počítáti*, v.a., 5th conj., with loc.

and, *i*.

with, *s*, with instr.

county, *hrabství*, s.n. (fr. Ger. *Graf*, Boh. *hrabě*). See note on the loss of *g* in

Bohemian; the substitution of *b* for *f* is very characteristic of the Slavonic languages, to which the sound *f* does not primarily belong.

Glatz, *Kladský*, adj.

something, *něco*.

more, above, *přes*.

parish, *farní* (fr. Ger. *Pfarrer*).

church, *kostel* (Lat. *castellum*, because they were originally fortified). Also less frequently *církev*: this again is a borrowed word from Ger. *Kirche*.

in the time of, *za času*.

the emperor, *císař* (Lat. *Caesar*).

Charles, *Karel*.

and moreover, *až*.

perhaps, *snad*.

fully, *zouplna*.

EXERCISE II.

Hájek¹ took for his chronicle a multitude of fables, inventions, things that were untrue and groundless, so that it is not possible in any way to consider it a trustworthy historical source. His work is more like (some) amusing reading than instructive history; moreover, he describes each event, like a chronicler, separately, without connexion with the others. And yet this chronicle, in spite of all the serious faults which

¹ For a note on Hájek, see the Introduction.

have long been pointed out in it by sound criticism, spread among the Bohemian people beyond measure: to which the simple style in which it is written contributed not a little.

to take, *pojati* (see 1st conj., 4th class).

for, *do*, prep. governing gen.

chronicle, *kronika*, s.f.

a multitude, *množství*.

fable, *bajka* (insert *e* before *k* in gen. plur.).

invention, fancy, *smyšlenka*.

a thing, *věc*, s.f.

untrue, *nepravdivý*:

groundless, *ne důvodný*.

not in any way, *nikterak*.

it was impossible, *nelze*; used as an impersonal.

a sure historical source, *bezpečný pramen historický*.

to be like, *podobáti se*.

work, *dílo*, s.n.

more, *více*.

some, *nejaký*.

amusing, *zábavný*.

reading, *čtení*, neut. verbal subst.

than, *než*.

history, *dějepis*, m. (lit. the writing of what is done).

instructive, *poučný*, fr. *po* and *uč*; same root as in *učiti*, to teach. *nauka*, s.f. learning, science. The idea devel-

oped in the Slavonic word for 'learning' is to get used to a thing.

moreover, *nad to* (lit. upon this).

to describe, *vypisovati*, 6th conj., from *vy*, out, and *pis*, to write, *ovati* being the infin. suffix.

The majority of verbs in the 6th conj. are formed from nouns.

each, *každý*.

event, *udalost*, s.f., 5th declen.

as a chronicler: use adverbial form, *kronikářsky*; and cf. such expressions as *mluviti česky*, to speak Bohemian (see p. 57).

separately, *o sobě*, by itself; lit. concerning itself.

without, *bez*.

connexion, *spojitost*, s.f. Cf. *spoj-ití*, to unite.

with, *s*.

the rest, *jiný*.

yet, *preče*.

in spite of, or over and above, *přes*. Here the form *přese* must be used on account of the next word beginning with two consonants.

all, *všecek*.
 serious, *hrubý*; lit. gross.
 fault, *vada*, s.f.
 which, *který*.
 long ago, *ode dávna*.
 to point out, *vytýkati*.
 sound, competent to express
 opinion, *soudný*. Cf. *soud*, m.,
 judgement.
 spread, *rozšířiti se*, fr. *roz*, in
 different directions. See
 table explaining the use of
 the prepositions in compo-
 sition, and *šir*, found also
 in sub. *šir*, breadth, and
šir-ý, broad.
 among, *v*, with loc.
 Bohemian, *Český*, fr. subst.
Čechy, Bohemia, a word the

derivation of which has
 never been satisfactorily
 explained.
 people, *národ*, s.m.
 beyond measure, *nad míru* ;
 measure, *míra*, s.f.
 to, *k*, prep. with dat.
 not a little, *nemalo*, which
 would perhaps be better
 translated 'a great deal.'
 See remarks on this idiom,
 p. 58.
 to contribute, *přispěti*.
 simple, popular, *prostonárodní*
 (*prostý*, simple, and *národ*,
 the people).
 style, *sloh*, m. (lit. putting to-
 gether).
 to write, *psáti*.

EXERCISE III.

In the middle of the eighteenth century, when truly the position of the Bohemian language and literature was most gloomy, the time of its new awakening was in preparation. To this fortunate change contributed in a conspicuous degree the more liberal spirits which arose in the reign of Maria Theresa and Joseph II, in Austria generally and in Bohemia particularly. General enlightenment, progress, and liberty in the pursuit of knowledge became the watchwords of the time; on which account also the prejudices which up to that time had prevailed on the subject of the Bohemian historical and literary monuments disappeared, their further destruction was stopped, and the freer

SLAVIC GRAMMAR

... knowledge truly pointed the way
... history to them as the chief
... Schemian history of the
... began to be the favourite
...

referred by Schafarik to that
of the tribe *Rakatae*, who
are mentioned as having
lived in what was afterwards
the duchy of Austria. Cf.
Dionysy. ii. 11 καὶ συνεχεῖς
αὐτοῖς τοῖς Βαίμοις), παρὰ τὸν
τοῦτον εἰς Τετρακατρία· καὶ
... τοῖς τοῖς κάμποις 'Ράκται
Schaf. *Slavische Alterthü-*
... 332).

... ἰσλαμῶν, ἰσλαμῶν.

... a peculiar *světlý*.

... ἰσλαμῶν.

... government, or education,
... ἰσλαμῶν, same root as
... ἰσλαμῶν white.

... ἰσλαμῶν, *gočrok* (lit. step for-
ward): *črok*, a step; Bul-
... ἰσλαμῶν, *чракъ*, foot. In most
of the Slavonic languages
there is only one word for
foot and leg, *noha*.

... ἰσλαμῶν, *svoboda*, f., connected
with the same root as *sibi*
and *suus*, and thus signify-
ing being one's own pro-
perty.

pursuit, *zkoumání*, verbal noun.
of or belonging to knowledge,
vědecký, adj.

to become, *stati se*.

watchwords, use sing. *heslo*, n.s.
of or belonging to the time,
časový. These words should
be put in the predicative
instrumental, as it is called,
which will be found fully
explained on p. 66.

on which account, *pročež*; also
take.

prejudices, *předsudek*, s.m. (lit.
judgement formed before-
hand, *před-soud*).

which up to that time had pre-
vailed, use adj. *dosavadní*,
and put it before the noun ;
dosavad, up to that time.

on the subject (lit. in the cause),
příčina, s.f., cause.

history, *dějiny*, s.f. (only used
in plural); lit. what is done,
hence history. Cf. the Ger.

Geschichte.

literary, *literární*.

memorials, *památka*, s.f. (fr. *po*,
prep., and *mat*, the same root
as *mens*).

to disappear, *mizeti*.

further, *další*, irreg. comp. of
další, where the *ny* is only
formative of the adjective.

destruction, *hubení*, s.n.

to stop, *staviti*, past part. pass.
stavený.

and, here use *ano*.

occupation, inquiry, pursuit,
zpytování.

to show, *odkazovati*.

friend, *přítel*, plur. *přátely*, fr. a
root signifying 'to be agree-
able'; for irreg. plur. see
p. 9.

history; the author uses the
word *historia*, which however
is very little employed in
Bohemian.

domestic, *domácí*.

as it were, *jakožto*.

chief, *hlavný*, adj.

a source, *pramen*, s.m.

historical, *historický*.

truth, *pravda*, s.f.

especially, particularly, *zejména*.

century, age, *věk*, m.

to become, *stávati se*, iterative
of *státi*.

favourite, *oblíbený* (lit. beloved),
and thus the past part. of a
verb has become an adject-
ive.

subject, *předmět*; use pred.
instr. The word may also
mean object (*před*, before,
and *met*, to throw). It seems
to have come into the other

Slavonic languages from Polish. study, <i>studie</i> , f.		having many sides, <i>mnoho-</i> <i>stranný</i> (fr. <i>mnoho</i> , much, and <i>strana</i> , a side).
---	--	--

EXERCISE IV.

Thereupon followed the complete rout of the remainder, who fought in their position on the mountain. The greater part took flight to the gate of Strahov, among them the elder Anhalt. The Moravians fought the longest, a small band led by the younger Thurn and Henry Šlik. Being surrounded on a place called the Star, they fought as long as they could, and almost all were killed or taken prisoners. The field of battle was covered with 6,000 slain; the entire camp of the Bohemians fell into the power of the enemy.

Meanwhile, when the battle began, the rival king sat in the castle at a banquet with lords and ladies. A messenger came from Anhalt to remind him that he should hurry to the field of battle for the greater encouragement of his men to bravery. But Frederick did not think the matter so pressing, and went to his dinner. At the gate of Strahov he was met by the wild flight of his soldiery, who sought a refuge in Prague.

there, thereupon, <i>tu</i> . to follow, <i>následovati</i> , 6th conj.; root <i>sled</i> , a track; <i>posled</i> , the last. the complete, <i>úplný</i> ; root <i>pln</i> , same as Lat. <i>plenus</i> . defeat, <i>porážka</i> ; root <i>raz</i> , a blow. the last, the remainder, <i>ostatní</i> . to fight, <i>bojovati</i> , 6th conj.		position, <i>postavení</i> , n., verbal noun. mountain, hill, <i>hora</i> , s.f. greater, <i>větší</i> , irreg. comp. of <i>veliký</i> . part, <i>díl</i> . to take to flight, <i>dati se na utěk</i> (<i>u-těk</i> , cf. <i>téci</i> , to flow, to run). the gate, <i>brána</i> , s.f.
--	--	---

- of Strahov : use the adjective, which is much more employed in Bohemian than in English.
- among, *mezi*.
- the elder (lit. old), *starý*.
- the longest, *nejdéle*, superlative adverb.
- to fight, to defend themselves, *brániti*.
- the Moravians, *Moravané*.
- a small, *malý*; same root as the English small. Cf. Ger. *schmal*.
- to lead, *vesti*. See irregular verbs, p. 50.
- young, *mladý*.
- Henry, *Jindřich*.
- to surround, *obstoupiti*; see force of *ob* in composition. Lat. *ambi*; Gk. ἀμφί.
- a place, *místo*, s.n.
- called, *řečený*, fr. *řici*; to speak. See under verbs of 1st conj., class 3. Of this verb only parts are found. *řečený* is past part. passive.
- already, *jež*.
- then, *tehdyž*.
- the Star, *Hvězda*.
- up to, *do*, prep.
- the last, *poslední*.
- the act of being overpowered, *přemožení*.
- almost, *léměž*.
- finally, *konečně*.
- to kill, *zbiti*; 1st conj., 5th class. or, *nebo*.
- to capture, *zjímati*, took; *jíma*, to have, to take. See 1st conj., class 4, for the simple verb *jíti*; this aspect belongs to the 5th conj.
- the field of battle, *boj-išlé*; *-išlé*, favourite termination for the place where a thing is done, occurring in many Slavonic languages.
- cover, *pokryti*. See irreg. verbs. killed, *zabitý* (also *zbitý*).
- camp, *ležení*; root *lež-eti*, 3rd conj. Cf. Ger. *Lager*.
- whole, *celý*. Cf. Gk. κάλος, Ger. *heil*.
- fall, *upadati*, *upadnouti*. The second aspect (perfect aspect of unity) had better be used, and, the *nou* falling out, it will become *upadlo*. There is no aspect corresponding to the Russian *пастя*.
- into the power, *v moc*; *v* with the accusative, because motion is implied.
- the enemy, *nepřítel*.
- time, *chvíle*; meanwhile, lit. during that time (in gen.), as point of time is often

- expressed in the Slavonic languages.
- battle, *bit-va*, s.f. Cf. *bit-ti*, to strike.
- to begin, *začati*. See 1st conj., 4th class. The pres. is *začnu*, the *n* being explained by the existence of a nasal originally, as is the case with all verbs of this conjugation. The nasals existed in Old Slavonic, but have now disappeared except in Polish and some dialects of Bulgarian.
- the rival king, *vzdorokrál*. Cf. Russ. *взоръ*, nonsense.
- to sit, *seděti*.
- in, *na*.
- castle, *hrad*, s.m.
- at, *při*.
- dinner, *hostina*, s.f.; *host*, a guest.
- banquet, *hostina skvostná* (lit. luxurious dinner).
- lord, *pan*, s.m.; lady, *paní*, s.f. a messenger, *posel*, m.
- from, *od*.
- to come, *přijeti*. See irreg. verbs.
- to remind, *napomínati* (use supine after the verb of motion, and see remarks on the supine, p. 35).
- that, *aby*.
- to hurry, *pospišiti*.
- for, *pro*.
- omit 'men'; the gen. case of the possessive pronoun is sufficient.
- bravery, *udatenství*, s.n. (lit. giving oneself up, self-abandonment, *u- dat.*).
- but, *ale*.
- Frederick, *Bedřich*.
- to take, think, *brati* (put negative with verb according to the Bohemian idiom).
- the matter, *več*, s.f.
- pressing, *pilný*.
- to go, *jeti*. See irregular verbs.
- up to, to, *až po* (*usque ad*). Observe the preposition *po*, frequently used in the Slavonic languages after verbs of motion.
- dinner; here use *tabule*, table, s.f.
- to meet with, *potkati se s* (with instr.).
- wild, *divý*.
- soldiery, *vojsko*, collective substantive.
- to seek, *hledati* (lit. to look after).
- a refuge, *utočiště*, s.n.; root *tok-*. Cf. previous remarks on termination *-iště*.
- Prague, *Praha*. Remember consonantal mutations, *h* becomes *z* (see p. 3).

EXERCISE V.

The gates of the city were closed; the streets in the market-place strongly occupied by soldiery, especially Saxon. On a balcony before the Town Hall sat the judges and the imperial commissioners, before whose eyes the prisoners were brought one after the other from the Town Hall on a scaffold to the block. The first beheaded was Joachim Andrew Šlik. . . . Dr. Jan Jesenský, a celebrated medical man and rector of the University, had first his tongue torn from his mouth and then his head cut off; his body was quartered under the gallows and placed on stakes about the streets. Mercy was shown to Sixtus of Ottersdorf when he was already on the scaffold, and he was taken back to prison. While the execution lasted, the drums were beaten continually, and trumpets were blown, so that the speeches of the condemned men should not be heard, who all went to death with manly courage.

of the city, *městský*.

to close, *zavřítí*.

a street, *ulice*.

a square, market-place, *náměstí*.

to occupy, *osázeti*.

especially, *nejvíce*.

Saxon, *Saský*.

a balcony, *altan* (from the German).

before, in front of, *před*.

the Town Hall, *radnice*, f.

a judge, *soudce* (see p. 8 about these nouns derived from verbs which belong to the first declension).

commissioner, *komisář*.

imperial, *císařský* (see rule about the formation of the plur. of adjectives ending in *-ský*).

eye, *oko* (see rule about the duals of some of these nouns).

a prisoner, *věz-eň*, s.m. (from a root signifying 'to bind.' Cf. Russ. *связка*, a bundle.)

to bring, to lead, *voditi*.

after the other, *podruhem*.

from, *z*.

scaffold, *lešení*.

to the block, *ke stínadlu* (from *stínadlo*); observe *ke*, because the next word begins with two consonants.

- to behead, *sřítí*; past part. pass. *sřát*. Connected with this verb is *ulřítí*, to cut off.
- Doctor, *Doktor*.
celebrated, *slavný*.
medical man, *lekař*, s.m.; verb *lečítí*, to heal. Cf. *leach*.
rector, *rektor*.
University, *Universita* (turn thus: to Dr. J. Jesenský, the tongue was torn).
to tear out, *vyřezati*.
mouth, *ústa*, pl. n.
first, *nejprve*.
then, *potom*.
head, *hlava*.
body, *tělo*.
to quarter, *čtvrtiti*. See consonantal change of *t* into *č*, p. 3.
gallows, *šibenice*, f.
a stake, *kolí*, n.
about the streets, *po ulicích*.
to place here and there, *rozstrkati*.
to show, to inform, *oznámiti* (turn in following order: to Sixtus of Ottersdorf mercy was shown).
mercy, *milost*, s.f.
- to lead, conduct, *zavesti*.
back, *nazpět* (root *pata*, the heel).
prison, *vězení*, s.n.
while, *pokud*.
the execution, *poprava*.
to last, *trvatí*.
to beat, *šlouci*. Use past part., it was beaten.
continually, *ustavičně*.
on the drums, *v bubny*, accus.; from *buben*, a drum.
to blow a trumpet, *troubiti*; use past part. pass.
so that should not be heard; turn: so that it should not be to hear (one of the ways of avoiding a direct pass. form).
a speech, *řeč*, s.f.
to condemn, *odsouditi*; change of *d* into *z* in past part. pass.
went, *šli* (see rule about this irregular verb in Grammar, 1st conj., 1st division, p. 49).
to death, *na smrt*.
courage, *mysl*, s.f.
manly, vigorous, *mužný*.

EXERCISE VI.

A vigorous defence of the Bohemian language and people issued in the year 1615 from the general diet itself, which pronounced in the presence of the Emperor Matthias this memorable resolution: 'As the Estates have brought to recollection how their esteemed ancestors judged that with the destruction of the Bohemian language both the Bohemian people and the name of the Bohemians must perish, they have laid it down as a law that in the courts in this country no other language besides the Bohemian shall be spoken.'

vigorous, *rázný*.

defence, *obrana*, s.f.

to issue, *vyjítí*; past tense *vyšel*. See remarks on this irregular form previously given.

year, *rok*.

general, *generální*.

diet, *sněm*, s.m. (lit. taking together, assembly): the *n* is inorganic and is frequently added in Slavonic; *s*, prep., and root *jíti*, to take, see under 4th division of the 1st conjugation. For another instance of a parasitic *n* cf. *snídaně*, breakfast; *s*, prep., *ídane*, connected with *jední*, *jídlo*; so also *jídelna*, the *salle à manger* at an hotel.

self, *sám*.

to utter, declare, *smluviti*.

presence, *přítomnost*, f. (for a similarly formed word cf. *potomstvo*, n., posterity).

the Emperor, *císař*.

memorable, *památný*.

resolution, *usnesení*, n., verbal substantive.

the Estate, *stav*, s.m.

to themselves, *sobě*, a somewhat redundant use of the reflexive which is found in all the Slavonic languages; thus cf. the expression, *národ sobě*, the very people.

recollection, *paměť*, s.f.

to bring, *přivesti*. See irreg. verbs.

how, *terak*.

esteemed, *vzácný*.

ancestors, *předkové*.

to judge, *soudíti*.

that, <i>to, že</i> . destruction, <i>zuhynutí</i> , s.n. name, <i>jméno</i> , s.n. must, <i>by musilo</i> ; <i>by</i> is explained in the form of the perfect verb. Originally an aorist of the verb <i>býti</i> , it is now	only used in tense forma- tion. must, <i>musiti</i> , borrowed from German <i>müssen</i> . The pro- per Slavonic is the imper- sonally used <i>třeba</i> , as <i>jest</i> <i>třeba</i> , one must.
---	--

EXERCISE VII.

After the great diet of the Bohemian crown, Charles betook himself in the same year, 1355, to Nuremberg, and held an imperial diet, in which he offered to the electors, princes, and other Estates in the German Empire a plan for new regulations, especially on the subject of the elections of the kings and the rights of the electors. There was a unanimous agreement for the most part on every subject already at that diet; for the rest also in the equally celebrated diet [held] at Metz in the year 1356; and Charles gave for that a letter generally known under the name of the Golden Bull, which from that time remained the fundamental law of the German Empire for some centuries. And by this letter Charles again affirmed the old accurate relations of Bohemia to the German Empire, for by a special article he declared that the sons of the electors and the other German princes should learn the Bohemian language, as being important and useful in the Empire.

after, <i>po</i> . great, <i>velký</i> or <i>veliký</i> . diet, <i>sněm</i> (vide supra). crown, <i>koruna</i> , s.f. to betake oneself, to depart, <i>odebrati se</i> . Charles, <i>Karel</i> .	the same year, <i>téhož roku</i> . See remarks in Syntax on the use of the genitive. Nuremberg, <i>Normberk</i> . to hold, <i>držeti</i> . imperial, <i>říšský</i> (Ger. <i>Reich</i>). in, <i>na</i> .
--	--

- offer, propose to, *před ložití* (lit. to lay before).
- elector, *kurfürst* (fr. German).
- prince, *kníže* (for plural see *t*-stems among the declensions).
- other, *jinyj*.
- the Empire, *říše*, f.
- a plan, *navrh*, m. (lit. on the top).
- especially, *jmenovitě*.
- in the matter, *v příčině* (lit. the cause).
- the election, *volba* (-ba, a common feminine termination of substantives derived from verbs).
- a king, *král* (fr. the Ger. *Karl* by metathesis, i. e. from Charles the Great, or Charlemagne, a monarch with whom the Slavs came early into conflict).
- a right, *právo*, s.n.
- unanimous, *jednosvorný*.
- agreement, *usnešení*; verbal noun (lit. carrying).
- for the most part, *větším dílem*.
- already, *ještě*.
- for the rest, *ostatkem*; instr. of *ostatok*.
- equally, *rovněž*.
- celebrated, *slavný*.
- at Metz, *v Metzi*.
- give forth to, *vydati*. See the list of prepositions in composition with verbs.
- letter, s.m., *list*.
- known, *známý*; used as an adjective, but really pres. part. pass. of *znáti*, to know; see 1st conj. In many of the Slavonic languages we have these participles used more or less as adjectives. Cf. Bulgarian.
- generally, *všebc*.
- Golden, *zlatý*.
- Bull, *bullá*.
- from that time, *odtud*.
- to remain, *zůstati*.
- fundamental, *základní*.
- law, *zakon*; put the noun and its adjective in the predicative instr.
- for some centuries, *na několik století*. *několik*, an adverb governing a genitive case, like Lat. *parum sapientiae*.
- letter, document, *listina*; almost a synonym of *list*.
- affirm, or confirm to, *stvrdití*, from *tvrďj*; firm, the prep. *s* plays just the same part as *con-* in the Lat. *confirmare*.
- again, *opět*; root, *pata*, the heel. See supra.
- old, *starý*.

accurate, legal, <i>právní</i> . relation, <i>poměr</i> , s.m. Bohemia, <i>Čechy</i> ; used in plur. special, <i>zvláštní</i> . article, <i>artikul</i> . to establish, declare, <i>unstanoviti</i> . that, <i>aby se</i> ; the <i>se</i> is put quite at the beginning of the sentence, after <i>a-by</i> (fr. <i>bych</i>).	son, <i>syn</i> . to learn, <i>učiti se</i> , which originally signifies 'to get used to,' and thus always takes the dative of the noun which it governs, thus: to learn the Bohemian language, <i>učiti se jazyku českému</i> . important, <i>vážný</i> . useful, <i>potřebný</i> .
--	--

EXERCISE VIII.

Quite at the beginning of his reign he devoted himself to great changes in matters of religion. He gave in the year 1781 the so-called edict or patent of toleration, by which permission was accorded to the Protestants to live in the imperial territories and to perform the services of God according to their rite openly, with certain exceptions and limitations. After so long a time which had passed since the Roman Catholic reformation of the Emperor Ferdinand II, there were always preserved in Bohemia remains of those who professed dissenting forms of faith, especially in the districts where there was not a sufficient number of clergy, and they now came forward openly with various and confused teaching, because for such a long time they had had no proper Church organization. By the officials and Roman Catholic community they were collectively called Hussites, being in reality rather descendants of the Bohemian Brothers.

immediately, quite, <i>hned</i> . at, <i>na</i> . the beginning, <i>počátek</i> .	reign, <i>pánování</i> , s.n. to give oneself, <i>dati se</i> . changes, <i>proměna</i> , s.f.
---	--

religion, *náboženství*, s.n.

to give forth, issue, *vydati*.

(After the past tense add the letter *t* for emphasis, the use of which is explained on p. 65.)

to call, *zváti*. See irreg. verbs. the edict, *edikt*.

or, *nebo-li*; *li* being a differentiating particle, signifying whether, and also used to ask a question.

patent, *patent*.

of toleration, *o toleranci*, i. e. concerning toleration.

to permit, *povoliti*.

Protestant, *Protestant*. (Must be put in the dative after permit.)

to live, dwell, *přebývati*.

territory, land, *země*, s.f.

imperial, *císařský*.

perform, *konati*.

service, *služba*, s.f.

belonging to God, *boží* (*Bůh*, God). For phonetics: cf.

kůn, gen. *koně*.

according to, *dle*.

rite, *řád*.

openly, *veřejně*, adv. (fr. a root *ver-*).

certain, *jistý*.

only, *toliko*.

exception, *výminka*, f.

limitation, *ohrada*, s.f.

long, *douhý*.

time, *čas*, s.m.

to pass, *uplynouti*, v. neut.

since Catholic, &c.: use *od*, from.

Catholic (Roman), *katolický*.

Reformation, *reformací*.

always, *vždy*.

to preserve, *zachovati* or *zachavati*.

remains, *zbytky*, s.m. (sing. *zbytek*).

a man who professes, *vyznavač* (fr. *vy*, and root *zna*, to know).

dissenting, *odchylný* (fr. *chýliti*, to deny).

a district, *krajina*, s.f. (root *kraj*, country or border; cf. *Ukraine*).

there was not, *nebyl* (compound negative with past tense).

sufficient, *dostatečný*.

number, *počet*, s.m.

clergy, *duchovenstvo*, s.n.

come forward, *vystoupiti*; *vy* and *stup*, a step.

now, *nyni*.

openly, *na jevo*. Cf. Russ. на яву.

teaching, *učení*, s.n.

of various descriptions, *ružný*.

confused, *zmatený*; root *mat* to confuse. Russ. мут-

because, *poněvaž*.

<p>they had had, use <i>nedostávalo</i> (<i>dostávalo</i>), with gen. of thing wanted.</p> <p>any, <i>žádný</i>. See p. 29 for an explanation of this expression.</p> <p>belonging to the Church, <i> církevní</i>.</p> <p>by, <i>od</i>. See the use of this to express the agent.</p> <p>official, <i>úřad</i>, s.m.</p> <p>community, <i>obecenstvo</i>, s.n. (<i>obecný</i>).</p>	<p>to call, <i>nazývají</i>.</p> <p>collectively, indiscriminately, <i>vesměš</i>.</p> <p>Hussites, <i>Husity</i> (fr. Jan Hus, the reformer).</p> <p>in reality, <i>skulkem</i> (fr. <i>skutek</i>); instance of the case of a noun being used for an adverb.</p> <p>descendant, <i>potomek</i>, s.m.</p> <p>a brother, <i>bratr</i>, m. For irreg. plur. see remarks on 1st declension, p. 8.</p>
---	---

EXERCISE IX.

The part of the imperial army which was collected for the leading of Götze from various garrisons, and to which the army from Silesia was about to be added as a defence against the Saxons, was annihilated by Arnim before the junction took place, in the battle fought at Nimburg. Then came the Elector himself to Prague and stayed there some months as in a country permanently annexed to his dominions. Under the protection of the Saxons the Bohemian emigrants returned in great numbers to their country, and took possession of their former estates. Henry of Thurn, now in the military service of the King of Sweden, and Wenceslaus of Roupov, the Bohemian high chancellor in the reign of the Palatine Frederick, returned also, and with much ceremony caused the twelve heads of their friends and comrades, who had been beheaded, to be taken down from the tower on the bridge and to be buried in the Týn church. Preparations were also made for the renewal of Protestant worship in the churches in the country. Before everything the Jesuits were again banished from Prague and

other places. There was then a conference of eighty-five evangelical clergymen and of those belonging to the Brotherhood in a synod in the Charles College, and they made an appeal to the Utraquist Estates about renewing the consistory and academy. In the midst of the progress of the Saxon arms Gustavus Adolphus extended his power over the greater part of Germany, and established everything so as to prepare for himself imperial rule on a new basis.

the part, *oddíl*.

to collect, *sebrati*.

the leading, *vedení*.

various, *rozličný*.

garrison, *posádka*.

to which, *ku kterému*. Observe the use of *ku* before the two consonants.

was about; use past tense of *míti*.

to unite itself, *připojiti se* (the last part of the compound is *jíti*, to take).

Silesia, *Slezsko*.

a defence, *obrana*; as a defence, render (to a defence).

against, *proti*.

a Saxon, *Sas*.

annihilated, utterly defeated; use verb *poražiti* (root *raz*, a blow).

before that, *dřív než*.

union, junction, *připojení*.

battle, *boj*, s.m. (1st declension, like *meč*).

fought at; translate by the past part. of *svěsti* (*svěsti bitvu*, the Bohemian phrase for 'to join battle.'

at, *u*.

to come, *přisěhovati*.

himself, *sam*.

to stay, *pobyti*.

some (of) months, a month, *měsíc*.

for ever, *na vždy*.

dominions, *panství*.

protection, *ochrana*.

return, *navrátiti se*.

emigrant, *vysěhovelec*.

in great numbers, *u velikém počtu*.

country, native, *vlast*, f.

to establish themselves in, take possession of, *uvázuli se v*.

former, *především* (*před*, before, and *-šly*; cf. past tense of verb, *jíti*).

estate, *statek*, s.m.

Henry, *Jindřich*.

military, *vojenský*.
 service, *služba*, s.f.
 Swedish, *Švedský*.
 chancellor, *kancleř*.
 during (the reign), *za*.
 Palatine, *falcký* (Ger. *Pfalz*).
 return, *vrátiti*. See *navrátiti*,
 a compound of the same
 verb.
 with much ceremony, *ve slav-*
ném průvodu; *průvod* is
 literally a band of persons
 accompanying some one.
 to take down, *sejmouti*; trans-
 late *dali sejmouti*, literally
 gave to take down, which
 illustrates at the same time
 the Slavonic avoidance of a
 purely passive form.
 head, *hlava*.
 cut off, *státý*. See previous
 explanation of this verb.
 comrade, *soudruh*, s.m.
 a tower, *věž*, f.
 belonging to the bridge, *mostský*.
 to bury, *pochovati*.
 of Týn, *Tynský*.
 a preparation, *příprava*. See
 other compounds of this
 word, as *rozprava*, *poprava*,
 &c.
 renewal, *obnovení*.
 worship; translate 'rites of the
 church.'

a Jesuit, *Jesuita*.
 before everything, *přede vším*.
 to banish, *vyprovědět* (lit. to
 order out of the place, to
 forbid).
 a place, *místo*, s.n.
 there was a conference, there
 met, *sešlo se*. This must be
 put in the neuter, as is often
 done when the verb comes
 at the head of the sentence.
 Cf. such expressions in Ger-
 man as *es sind*; French,
il y a.
 clergyman, priest, *kněz*, plur.
kněže, same root as *kníže*, a
 prince, but not to be con-
 founded with it. Both are
 from the Old Ger. *kunings*;
 just as in England in the
 old time clergymen were
 called Dominus and Sir.
 evangelical, *evangelický*.
 belonging to the brotherhood,
bratvský. Hereby is meant
 the Bohemian Brothers, who
 when expelled from their
 native country formed com-
 munities in many others of
 this fraternity. The cele-
 brated John Amos Comenius
 was a bishop (see *Life*, by
 Kvačala).
 a synod, *synoda*.

College, <i>Kollej</i> , f. of Charles, <i>Karlovy</i> (the celebrated German emperor and Bohemian king who gave the Golden Bull). to make, <i>učiniti</i> . an appeal, <i>provolání</i> . the Utraquists or Calixtines, <i>pod obojí</i> ; the regular Bohemian expression for those who took the sacrament in both kinds. See <i>oba</i> , under numerals. consistory, <i>konsistoře</i> . academy, <i>akademia</i> .	the progress, <i>prospívání</i> . amidst, <i>mezi</i> . arms, <i>zbraň</i> , s.f., sing. to spread, <i>rozšířiti</i> . Gustavus Adolphus, <i>Gustav Adolf</i> . power, <i>moc</i> , s.f. over, <i>po</i> . part, <i>část</i> , s.f. to establish, <i>zařizovati</i> . preparation, <i>spřísobení</i> . for himself, dat., like Lat. <i>sibi</i> . basis, foundations, <i>základ</i> , s.m. (use plur.).
--	---

EXERCISE X.

After these changes in Church matters the Emperor Joseph was seized with his favourite idea quite at the beginning of his reign, that the German language should be established among all the Austrian peoples as the means of school organization. Already in the second month after the death of Maria Theresa the imperial order went forth concerning Bohemia that no one should be received into a public school without an adequate knowledge of the German language (1780, Dec. 30). By a new arrangement of studies also, published in the year 1784, German was made the language in which instruction was to be given in the public schools in place of Latin; so also in the University of Prague the employment of the German language was extended, especially by the introduction of it into all the subjects of the philosophical faculty. Less care was taken about the advancement of knowledge in the University studies by the orders of the Government. The new regulations from

the year 1784 gave to the studies a retrogressive tendency rather for the necessities of the state-service, which they preserved till lately, by the arrangement of examinations with a view to fitness with regard to public offices. Learned literature, however, none the less developed itself through the general awakening of (men's) efforts towards mental progress already from the time of Maria Theresa. Bohemia had from the year 1769 a private club of learned men, which was made a public institution by the Emperor Joseph in 1784, under the name of the Royal Bohemian Society of Arts. Mathematical and physical sciences, and history, especially Bohemian, were pursued by their members and also other scholars with equal enthusiasm and success. From the circle of these men issued then the critical investigator of the Slavonic languages and scholar of European celebrity, Joseph Dobrowsky.

after, *vedlé*.

change, *proměna*, s.f.

was occupied (or seized): turn this round so as to avoid a passive form (according to the genius of the Slavonic languages), and translate, 'his favourite idea seized the Emperor,' &c.

to seize (or occupy), *zabavovati*.

also, *rouněž*.

beginning, *počátek*, s.m.

favourite, *zalíbená*; really past part. pass. of *zalíbiti*, now used as an adjective.

idea, *myšlénka*; a diminutive form.

that the German language

should be, *aby se jazyk německy*, &c. Observe the position of the reflexive pronoun in the sentence.

to establish, to plant in, *všítipiti*. Austrian, *rakouský*. For the explanation of this name vide supra.

a means, *prodstřed*. Here use the pred. instr.

belonging to a school, *školní*.

organization, *zřízení*, n., verbal noun.

already, *již*.

to go forth, *vyjítí*. See the irregular verbs.

the order, *nařízení*, s.n.

that no one; use two negatives

(which in the Slavonic languages do not make an affirmative), and affix the last negative to the verb received; use past part. of verb *jíti*, to take (only used in compounds), here *přijíti*, and apotopate the participle as it is a predicate.

into; use here *do*, with gen., in the sense of 'as far as.' public school, *gymnasium*.

without, *bez*, gen.

adequate, *dostatečný*.

knowledge, *známost*.

December, *prosinec*, m.

to publish, give forth, *vydati*.

the German language, *němčina* (for this termination cf. such forms as *polština*, the Polish language).

to make, *učiniti*.

the teaching language (or language in which instruction was given), *vyučovací*.

in place of, *místo*, adv.; takes the gen.

Latin, *latina*, s.f.

also, *těž*. Cf. Russian *тоже*.

in; here use *na*.

University, *Universita*.

of Prague, *Pražský*, adj.

to spread, extend, *rozšířiti*.

See use of prepositions in

comp. for *roz-* and *šířiti*.

Cf. *širý*, wide, broad.

the use, *užívání*, s.n.

especially, *zvláště*.

the introduction, *zavedení*, n.

subject, *predmět*.

faculty, *fakulta*, s.f.

philosophical, *filosofický*.

of or concerning; use *o* with the accus.

of knowledge, or science, *vědecký*.

progress, *prospěch*, s.m.

in University studies, *při studii*. See the use of *při* among the prepositions.

to take care, *pečovati* (to be busy or anxious about; really connected with the verb *péci*, to bake). Cf. such Latin expressions as *coquit timor*.

the order, *zařízení* (we have already had this noun compounded with other prepositions).

government, belonging to, *vladní* (same root as English *weald*; Ger. *Ge-walt*).

less, *méně*. Cf. Lat. *minus*.

retrogressive, *obrácený* (lit. turned back); *obrátili* for *obvrátili*, the *b* having pushed out the *v*. The participle has become an adjective.

- tendency, *směr*, s.m.
 rather, *vice*.
 a want, *potřeba*, s.f.
 state, of or belonging to, *státní*.
 to preserve, *zachovatí*.
 up to, *až do*.
 recent, *nedávný* (lit. not long ago), but cf. remarks supra on the negative adjectives.
 an attempt, examination, proof, *zkouška*. Cf. *kus*, a bite; hence, a trial.
 to decide, *rozhodovati*, 6th conj.
 fitness, *schopnost*, s.f.
 office, *úřad*.
 literature, *literatura*, s.f.
 to develop, *zmáhati*. Another aspect of *zmoci*; see irreg. verbs.
 still, however, *však*.
 none the less, *nicmene*, adv.
 general, *obecný*.
 arousing, awakening, *probuzení*.
 an effort, *snaha*, s.f.
 the progress, *pokrok*. Cf. *krok*, a step.
 spiritual, mental, *duchovní*.
 private, *soukromý* (root *krom*, as in *kromě*, beside).
 club, society, *spolek*, m. (s and *polk*, same word as folk, *ὄχλος*, *vulgus*, &c., which in Russian has become limited to the army).
 learned, *učený*.
 a man, *muž*.
 to raise, *povýšiti*.
 known, public, *uznaný*; publicly known, *veřejně uznaný*.
 under the name, *pod jménem*.
 See *n*-stems among nouns.
 royal, *královský*.
 society, *společnost*, s.f.
 knowledge, science, *věda*, s.f. (root *věd*, to know; Ger. *wissen*; our 'wit').
 mathematical, *matematický*.
 physical or natural, *přirodní* (*příroda*, nature); use the form *mathematico-přirodní*.
 pursued, cultivated, *pěstováti*. Cf. Russ. *пѣсгунъ*, a guard-dian.
 a member, *člen*.
 scholar, learned man, *učenec*, s.m. (root *uč*).
 equal, *rovný*.
 enthusiasm, love, *láska*. Cf. Russ. *ласковать*; Swedish, *elsk-er*, I love.
 success, *prospěch*, s.m.
 circle, *kruh*, s.m.
 then, *tehdy*.
 critical, *kritický*.
 investigator, *zpytatel*.
 Slavonic, *slovanský*.
 European, *evropejský*.

EXERCISE XI.

The age of the Emperor Joseph II was but little favourable to the fine arts. The rule of Joseph had no thought of them, but contributed irretrievable injuries by the destruction of the old monuments of learning. Bohemia was filled, just as once by the excesses of the Taborites, with the ruins of the artistic church buildings, when not only the churches of the ruined monasteries, but also many others, were abandoned to destruction by the express orders of the government, which declared that the restoration of them was a useless burden and injurious to the proper management of the State. So matters were arranged carelessly on the destruction of the monasteries, together with the pictures, the statues, and the church furniture of artistic workmanship. Many artistic objects of that sort were entirely destroyed, and together with them also many memorials of learning and sources of history. The Emperor Joseph wished even to turn the castle of Prague into a barracks, and ordered that there should be a public auction to sell the remains of the treasure chamber (1782) and the library (1789) at one time of the Emperor Rudolf II for the value of a mere song.

age, *věk*, s.m.

little, *malo*, adv. (vide supra).

favourable, *přizniv*.

fine arts, *uměním vytvorným*.

had not; compound the negative with the verb.

any, *zádný* (vide supra).

thought, inclination, *smysl*, s.m.

to contribute, furnish, *spůsobit*
or *způsobiti*.

irretrievably, *nenabytý*.

injury, *škoda*, s.f.

destruction, *rušení*, n. (verbal noun).

old, *starý*.

monument, *pomník*, m.

art, *umění*, s.n. (*um*, mind);

rozum, understanding; *rozuměti*, to understand.

to fill, *naplniti*.

similarly, in the same way,
podobně.

- the severity, excesses. In the original the word *surovost* is used in the singular; Russ. суровость. It is a good Slavonic word.
- a Taborite, *Tábor*, fr. *tábor*, the celebrated camp fortified by *Žižka* at the time of the Hussite wars.
- a ruin, *zřícenina*, s.f.
- artistic, *umělý*. Cf. *um* and its cognates.
- a building, *stavba*, s.f.
- belonging to the church, *chrámovy*. An adjective from the old noun *chrám*, a church, which is the original Slavonic name, the other words being borrowed, thus: *církev*, *kirche*, and *kostel*, *castellum*, these two last words being introduced by the German missionaries; *chram* is now used more often for a heathen temple.
- not only, *netoliko*.
- to ruin, *zrušiti*.
- monastery, cloister, *klašter*.
- many, *mnohý*.
- to abandon, *zůstávati*.
- destruction, *zkáza*, s.f.
- at; here use *dle* with the genitive.
- express, *vyslovný*.
- order, *rozkaz* (*roz* and *kaz*, to point out, order). Cf. the familiar Russian указъ.
- the government, *vláda*.
- to declare, *praviti*.
- restoration, *opravování* (verbal substantive neuter).
- to make, *činiti*.
- useless, *zbytečný*.
- expenditure, *náklad*.
- injurious, *škodlivý*.
- proper management of the State, or State economy, *hospodárství*.
- of the State, *státní*.
- matters were arranged, *nakládalo se* (lit. it arranged itself).
- on or at, *při*.
- easily, *lehce*; also *lehko*.
- also, *také*.
- a picture, *obraz*, s.m., especially used of religious pictures.
- statue, *socha*, s.f.
- furniture, *nářadí*, s.n.
- belonging to a church, *kostelní*.
- workmanship, *dílo*, s.n.
- many; use the adverb *mnoho* and put the noun after it in the genitive.
- sort, *druh*, m.
- were entirely destroyed, *přišlo na zmar*. *přišlo*, fr. *přijíti*;

<p>vide supra for explanation of the irregular past tense of this verb. <i>zmar</i>, destruction. <i>na zmar přijíti</i>, to perish utterly.</p> <p>together with, <i>spolu s</i>, with instr. See remarks supra on the root <i>pol</i>, <i>spolek</i>, &c.</p> <p>a memorial, <i>památka</i> (lit. a thing on which the mind is put).</p> <p>belonging to history, <i>dějepisný</i>.</p> <p>source, <i>zřídlo</i>, s.n.</p> <p>to wish, <i>chtíti</i>. See the forms of this verb under the 3rd conj.</p> <p>castle, <i>hrad</i>, s.m. (same as Russ. городъ; Serbian, градъ).</p> <p>a barracks, <i>kasárna</i>, s.f.; a</p>	<p>word borrowed from the French.</p> <p>public, <i>veřejný</i>.</p> <p>auction, setting up to sale, <i>dražba</i>.</p> <p>to sell, <i>prodati</i>.</p> <p>the remains, <i>ostátek</i>, s.m. (must be used in plural).</p> <p>chamber, <i>komora</i>, s.f. (Lat. <i>camera</i>).</p> <p>treasure, of or belonging to, <i>pokladní</i> (root <i>klad</i>, to store up).</p> <p>library, <i>knihovna</i>, s.f.</p> <p>at one time, <i>někdy</i>.</p> <p>for, <i>za</i> (with accus.).</p> <p>value, price, <i>cena</i>.</p> <p>mere song; translate, 'the price of old lumber'; lumber, <i>haraburdí</i>, s.n.</p>
--	--

EXERCISE XII.

Both sides then got themselves ready for the war, and the Bohemians first took the field under the generalship of Prokop Holý. Having invaded the country of Pilsen, they first tried to get possession of Pilsen, but this time in vain; they then directed their course further to the frontiers and to Tyn Horšov. But, while the Germans were further planning and hesitating in their expedition, the Bohemian army scattered in various directions at that time, for want of provisions. On the first day of August the crusading army, having been collected near the western frontiers of Bohemia to the number

of 90,000 infantry and 40,000 cavalry, finally invaded Bohemia. Frederick, Marquis of Brandenburg, as before, was the chief leader; only King Sigismund remained behind at Nuremberg. After the example of the Bohemians they provided themselves with military carriages for this campaign. At first they made an attack on Tachov; but, having met with a vigorous resistance, they directed their course further to the castle of Swamberk; where also, having divided themselves into three divisions, they began savagely to plunder and devastate the intervening country thence to Domažlice. Meanwhile the Bohemians had again collected their military force to the number of 50,000 foot and 5,000 horsemen and went to meet the powerful enemy. There as soon as they approached, and the report of it had reached the German camp, a sudden fear, which was already customary, seized the crusaders, so that immediately they fled to the Bavarian forest in the greatest disorder. The Bohemians, quickly pursuing them, reached them at Domažlice (August 14). Then the Germans fled precipitately one over the other, and the carriages which were to serve as a protection were entangled in the forests and increased the universal confusion. Of the fugitives many were killed, many taken prisoners, by the Bohemians; about 3,000 carriages fell into their hands with ample booty, and the expedition had for the Germans a termination more disgraceful than any previous one.

get ready for, *miti se* (with dat.).

the Bohemians, *Čechové*.

to take, *sebrati*.

the field, *pole*.

leading, *vedení*, n. (verbal noun).

Holý, adj., gen. *Holého*.

to invade, *vrhnouti*; in the part. I and II, the *nou*

is dropped. See remarks under 2nd conj. It will be observed that this omission of *nu-* more often occurs in n. verbs of this conjugation. translate: up to (as far as) the country of Pilsen (*do kraje Plženskeho*).

- to try, *pokusiti se*.
 first, *nejprve*.
 to get possession of, *o dobyť*.
 but, *ac*.
 this time, *tenkrát*.
 in vain, *darmo*.
 then, *potom*.
 to direct one's course, *táhnouti*
 (Slavonic root meaning 'to stretch'). In the past tense the *nu* is lost.
 further, *dále*.
 frontier, *hranice*, f. (borrowed by the Germans as *Grenze*).
 as far as, *až k*.
 further (of time), *děle*.
 to plan, *rozmyšletí*, v.a.
 to hesitate, *měskati se*.
 expedition, *vyprava*, s.f.
 to scatter itself, *rozjítí*. See irreg. past tense *sub voce*.
 at that time, *na ten čas*.
 for (owing to), *pro*.
 food, *špíže*, Ger. *Speise*.
 first, *teprv*, adv.; use the gen. *dne*, point of time; also gen. of *Srpen*, August.
 crusader, *křížový*, adj. (*kříž*, cross).
 to collect, *sebrati*.
 near, *blíž* (with gen.).
 western, *západní* (*západ*, the west; lit. the place where the sun sets).
- foot, *pěšít* (where we see a recurrence of the root of Lat. *pes*, foot; the Bohemian word being *noha*).
 cavalry, *jízdný*, adj.
 to invade, *vtřhnouti*, and see remarks on this verb supra.
 finally, *konečně*.
 marquis, *markrabě*.
 of Brandenburg, *Brandenburgský*.
 previously, *předěle*, adv. of *předěly* (*před*, before, and *ěly* used in past tense of *jíti*).
 the chief, *vrchní* (*vrch*, the summit).
 leader, or commander, *velitel*.
 to remain, *zůstati*.
 behind, *pozadu*.
 Nuremberg, *Normberk*.
 to provide, *opatřiti*.
 a German, *Němec*.
 campaign, expedition, *tažení*, s.n.
 a carriage, *voz*, s.m.
 belonging to war, *valečný* (*valka*, s.f., war).
 to attack, *udeřiti*, v.a., constructed with *na* (Russ. ударъ, a blow).
 but, *ale*.
 to meet, *potkati se*.
 vigorous, *mužný*, adj. (*muž*, a man).

- resistance, *odpor* (root *přítí*).
See 5th conj.).
- direct one's course, *táhnouti*;
omit *nu* in past tense.
- further, *dale*.
- also, then, *pak*.
- to divide, *rozdělití*.
- into, *na*.
- three divisions, *tri oddíly*. Ob-
serve carefully the govern-
ment of the numerals.
- savagely, *ukrutně* (root *krut*);
adj. *krutý*, steep, precipi-
tous.
- plunder, *pleniti*.
- devastate, or rob, *loupiti*.
- intervening, *pomezí*.
- from thence, *odtud*.
- Domažlice; used in plural as
the names of many Polish
towns and villages are. Cf.
Maciejowice, the name of
the place at which Koscius-
zko was taken prisoner.
The place is now called
Tauss.
- meanwhile, *mezitím*, adv.
- again, *opět*.
- military, *vojenský*.
- force, *síla*, s.f.
- horsemen, or cavalry, *jezdec*
(he has previously used
jízdný).
- to meet, *ustříc proti*; used as
- an adverb. In Russia the
form of the noun is still
preserved in such expres-
sions as *навстрѣчу*. Use
dat. after adv.
- powerful, *mocný*.
- enemy, *nepřítel*. Observe effect
of negative.
- hardly, *sotva*.
- to come near, *přiblížiti se*.
- had reached (lit. had gone
forth), *vyjíti*.
- report, *hlas*, s.m.
- camp, *vojště*.
- sudden, *nahlý*.
- fear, *strach*, s.m.
- customary, *obyčejný* (root *yč*,
same as *uč*. Cf. previous
remarks).
- seize, *popadnouti*; use past tense
with the omission of the
syllable *nu*.
- a crusader, *křižák*.
- immediately, *ihned*.
- disorder, *nepořádek*.
- they took to flight, *dali se na*
útek (*u-tek*, see irreg. verbs,
téci, to flow).
- forest, *les*, m.
- Bavarian, *bavorský*.
- a Bohemian, Čech.
- quickly, *rychle*.
- after them, *za nimi*.
- to hurry, *chvátati*.

to reach, *dostihnouti*; use past tense, without *nu*.

at, *u*.

to flee, *utíkatí*.

over, *přes*.

which were to serve, *měvše*;

past part. of *míti*. See rules

on the idiomatic uses of this verb.

to serve, *sloužiti*.

a defence, *obrana*, s.f.

to entangle, *zaplésti*. See 1st conj., 1st class.

to increase, *rozmnožiti* (*rozmnoho*).

universal, general, *všeobecný*.

confusion, *zmatek*, s.m.

many; use *mnoho*.

to kill, *zabíti*.

to take prisoner, *zjímáti* (same root as in the verb 'to take').

fell; use *padlo* in neut., the number being taken as a kind of lump sum, a very characteristic form in Slavonic.

into their hands, *do rukou*. Observe dual form.

ample, abundant, *hojný*.

booty, *kořist*, s.f.

had, *vzítí*, to take. See p. 39.

for, or concerning, *pro*.

an end, *konec*, s.m.

disgraceful, *ohavný*.

previous, *předešlý*.

EXERCISE XIII.

As may easily be imagined, one cannot venture, in a survey of romantic poetry of the old time in general and lyric poetry in particular, to omit Bohemian and Slavonic poetry, even if there were an anxiety that the parallel would not be so favourable as we could perhaps have wished from the standpoint of the nineteenth century. Certainly romanticism showed its influence, although not in such a luxuriant fashion upon us Bohemians and upon the Slavs in general; and must therefore also have its history among us. But on the whole this appellation Slavonic, which also in the Middle Ages played its part, as for example in the Hussite movement in Bohemia, often in

meaning corresponding to our conception of Slavism, exhibits itself in Kochanowski, Gundulić, and other Polish and Ragusan poets and authors; but in the most remote east the word 'Slavonic' had especially the signification of religious, signifying the old ecclesiastical language used in the service of the Orthodox Church. Dante, who first was thoroughly acquainted with this matter of raising the language of the people, or rather dialect, to literary importance in opposition to the domination of Latin, recognizes in his writing *de vulgari eloquentia* the excellent ethnographical classification of Europe into the Roman, Teutonic, and Slavonic, but he speaks of the Slavs only cursorily as if he had not much to say about them.

<p>as may easily be imagined; translate <i>se samo sebou rozumí</i>, and observe the redundant reflexive.</p> <p>to be bold, to dare, <i>ne smíti</i>.</p> <p>a survey, <i>přehled</i> (root <i>hled</i>, to look).</p> <p>romantic, <i>romantický</i>.</p> <p>poetry, <i>poésie</i>. The regular Bohemian word, however, is <i>básnictví</i>.</p> <p>age, time, <i>věk</i>.</p> <p>in general, <i>všbec</i> (<i>v-obec</i>).</p> <p>lyric poetry, <i>lyrika</i>.</p> <p>particularly, <i>zvlášť</i> (<i>vlast</i>, what specially belongs to one, hence native country; cf. Russ. область, district, for об-власть).</p> <p>to be wanting, <i>scházeti</i>.</p> <p>Slavonic, <i>Slovanský</i>.</p>	<p>even if, <i>řebas</i>, conj.</p> <p>anxiety, care, <i>obava</i>.</p> <p>parallel, <i>paralela</i>.</p> <p>fall, <i>vypadnouti</i>; prefix <i>ne</i> to the verb.</p> <p>favourable, <i>přiznivý</i>; translate, 'should fall so favourably.'</p> <p>standpoint, <i>hledíšte</i>, s.n. Observe termination, root <i>hled</i>.</p> <p>century, <i>století</i> (<i>sto</i>, hundred; <i>léto</i>, year; also summer, probably because summer was considered the most important part of the year).</p> <p>probably, <i>snad</i>.</p> <p>to wish, <i>přáti</i>, used with reflexive.</p> <p>certainly, <i>zajisté</i>.</p> <p>romanticism, <i>romantika</i>.</p> <p>to show, <i>jevíti</i>.</p>
---	---

- influence, *vliv*, s.m. (root *v-liti*, to pour in).
 certainly, confessedly, *arci*.
 equally, *zrovna*.
 in a luxuriant fashion; use
 pres. part. of *rozhodovati*, to
 be luxuriant.
 must, *museti* (borrowed from
 German).
 history, *historia*. [The writer
 seems to prefer words of
 Latin origin, of which there
 are good Bohemian equiva-
 lents.]
 on the whole, *celkem*.
 appellation, name, *název*, s.m.,
 from *na*, prep., and *zva-ti*,
 to call. Cf. also *ozvěna*,
 an echo.
 the Middle Ages, *středověk*, s.m.
střed, root signifying middle;
t frequently inserted after *s*
 in Bohemian, thus, cf. *stří-
 bro*; Russ. серебро; Eng.
silver.
 to play, *hráti*. Russ. играть.
 Observe Bohemian *h* sub-
 stituted for *g*.
 certainly, *sice*.
 rôle, *rolí*; borrowed from
 French.
 for example, *ku přeměru*, fre-
 quently shortened into *ku
 př.*
- the movement, *hnutí*, verbal
 subst. neut.
 Hussite, *husitský*.
 but, *nebo*.
 often, *často*.
 meaning, *smysl*.
 our, *naš*.
 conception, *ponětí*, s.n.; practi-
 cally the same meaning as
pojem, and also derived from
 the verb *jíti*, to take; the
n being merely added for
 euphony (vide remarks
 supra).
 Slavism, *Slovanstvo*.
 corresponding to, or like, *po-
 dobný*.
 to exhibit itself, *vyskytovatí se*.
 in, *u*, which is frequently used
 very much like *chez* in
 French.
 Kochanowski, Jan, the cele-
 brated Polish poet of the
 sixteenth century (1530-
 1584).
 Gundulić, the chief poet of
 Ragusa, author of the poem
 'Osman' (1588-1638).
 poet, *básník*, s.m.
 author, writer, *spisovatel*, s.m.
 Polish, *polský*.
 Ragusan, *dubrovnický*, fr. *du-
 brovnik*, the Slavonic name
 for Ragusa.

but, *avšak*.
 in, *na*.
 remote, *vzdáleny*.
 east, *východ*, s.m.
 the word, *slovo*.
 the meaning, signification, *význam*, s.m.
 especially, *predevším* (lit. before everything).
 religious, *náboženský*.
 import, signify, *naznačovati*.
 sacred, ecclesiastical, *posvátný*,
 alluding to the oldest form of Slavonic known, in which the Gospels and other portions of the Bible were translated in the ninth century by St. Cyril and Methodius.
 divine service, *bohoslužba*, s.f.
 orthodox, *pravoslavný*, the name of the Greek Church as opposed to the Latin.
 the Church, *církev* (vide supra on the uses of this word).
 thoroughly, *tuším*.
 acquainted, *vědom*. Originally the pres. part. pass. of the verb *věd*, to know, but now used merely as an adjective. In the original, *si první byl vědom*, where we get a good example of the redundant

reflexive, so characteristic of the Slavonic languages.
 question or matter, *úkol*; use the genitive here after *vědom*.
 against, *proti*.
 domination, superiority, *vrchpanství* (*vrch*, upper).
 Latin, *latina*, s.f. Cf. remarks previously given of the forms assumed by the *names* of languages.
 to raise, *povýšiti*, v.a. (*po-vyš-*). literary, *literární*.
 importance, *důležitost*.
 of the people, adj., *prostonárodní*.
 of that time, *tehdejší*.
 rather, *lépe*, fr. *lepší*, adj., beautiful, a word not much used in the Western languages, but common in some of the Eastern, e.g. Serbian.
 recognize, know, *znáti*.
 writing, *spis*, m.
 good, *dobrý*.
 ethnographical, *etnografický*.
 classification, division, *roztřídění*, verbal noun from *roztříditi*, to classify.
 Europe, *Evropa*.
 branch, *kmen*, s.m.
 Roman, *romanský*, but, on the other hand, *Řim*, Rome.

<p>Teutonic, <i>Germanšký</i>. A mere scholar's word, the ordinary word being <i>německý</i>.</p> <p>but, <i>avšak</i> (observe compound <i>a-však</i>, and compare conjunctive use of <i>a</i> in <i>a-le</i>, <i>a-bo</i>, &c.).</p> <p>to speak, <i>mluviti</i>.</p> <p>a Slav, <i>Slovan</i>.</p>	<p>only, <i>jen</i>. Cf. Russ. <i>инокъ</i>, a monk (lit. a solitary person). hastily, cursorily, <i>zběžně</i> (<i>z-běž-</i>, to fly, run; Lat. <i>fugio</i>).</p> <p>somewhat ignorant, <i>nevěda asi mnoho</i>; translate, 'somewhat ignorant as to what he might tell about them.'</p> <p>to tell, <i>pověděti</i>.</p>
---	--

EXERCISE XIV.

The Slavs at the time of their arrival in Bohemia, in those respects, in an important way differed from the previous inhabitants of that land, in that they were a people especially fond of agriculture; thenceforth they developed themselves as quiet and peaceful workers—brave, certainly, but not seeking war, and defending for the most part only their property and native land. And they, as they came to the land, could not have been a numerous people according to the conception of our age; but in their quiet business multiplied themselves more quickly than their predecessors, and filled the land everywhere with very closely-packed dwellings. From old time the Slavs had lived in houses, each family being more inclined (to live) amidst its fields, because thus the families generally, when they had already multiplied into numerous companies, remained together and did not separate themselves from the land. Villages grew up therefore by the addition of new dwellings. In the development of the people into families, and the families into connexions and townships of this kind, was based all the State organization of the ancient Bohemians. Each township which remained on the undivided soil, which it cultivated,

elected for itself an elder or ruler, who, like a general father, governed the estate and gave all the orders which were necessary.

a Slav, *Slovan*, s.m.
 time, *čas*.
 arrival, *přistěhování*.
 by that, *tím* (instr. of *ten*).
 importantly, *podstatně*.
 distinguish, *lišiti*.
 previous, *především*. For explanation of this word vide supra.
 an inhabitant, *obyvatel*.
 land, *země*.
 before everything, *především*.
 fond of, *milovný*.
 agriculture, *orba* (root *or*, same as in *arare*, to plough. Cf. *orač*; Old Slavonic, *oradlo*. For termination *-ba* cf. *služba*).
 thenceforth, *tudíž*.
 to habituate themselves, *zvyknouti*; use past tense with the omission of *nu*.
 quiet, *tichý*.
 fruitful, profitable, *plodný*.
 labour, *práce* (translate, 'they grew accustomed to quiet and profitable labour').
 brave, *chrabý*.
 surely, *stíci*.

to seek, *vyhledávati* (lit. to look out for).
 war, *voj*; use gen. plur.
 but, *než*.
 to defend, *hájiti*.
 for the most part, chiefly, *hlavně*.
 only, *jen*.
 their property, *jmění*.
 soil, *půda*, s.f.
 to come, *přijíti*.
 to be able, *moci* (prefix the negative to the verb).
 numerous, *četný*. Cf. *počet*.
 number, to count, *počítati*.
 according to, *dle*.
 the conception, idea, *poněti*.
 For explanation of this word vide supra.
 in consequence of, *při*.
 quiet, *pokojný* (*pokoj*, rest; also sometimes used for chamber).
 business, *živnost*, s.f.; method of life, root of *žítí*, to live; cf. also *živ*, alive; *na živě*, living.
 to multiply, *množiti*.
 quickly, *rychlé*.
 predecessor, *předchůdce* (from

- před*, before, and *chůdce*, derived from the verb *choditi*, to go).
- to fill, *naplňovati* (*napln*, full; Lat. *plenus*).
- thick, *hustý*.
- a dwelling, *bydliště*; the termination, as previously explained, expresses the place 'where,' and is found in all the Slavonic languages.
- from old time, *od starodávna*. A substantive is coined out of an adjective; cf. such expressions as *смолоу́*, from youth upwards, in Russian.
- to dwell, live, *přebývati*.
- houses; translate, 'built dwellings.'
- to build, *stavěti*; past part. used pretty much as an adj.
- a dwelling, abode, *příbytek*.
- each, *každý*.
- family, *rodina*, s.f.
- being more inclined; translate, 'preferably,' or 'most preferably,' *nejraději*.
- a field, *pole*, s.n.
- because, *poněvadž*.
- generally, *obvyčejně* (vide supra).
- company, friendly group, *prátelstvo*, s.n. Cf. the word for friend (same root as Sansk. *pri*, agreeable).
- together, collectively, *pohromadě*.
- separate, *dělití*; use neg. compounded with the verb; translate, 'did not divide themselves concerning the land.'
- a village, *vesnice*, f.
- to grow up, *vzniknouti*; use the past tense with the omission of the syllable *nu*.
- in this way, therefore, *tudý*.
- accession, addition, *přístavová-
ním*.
- dwelling, *obydlí*, s.n. (root *by*, to be).
- development, *rozvětvení*, s.n.; a verbal noun, derived from *ros* and *větev*, a branch.
- a family, stock, *kmen*, m.
- connexion, or relationship, *příbuzenstvo*, s.n. It is very difficult to translate accurately these forms.
- or, *čili*.
- kind, *způsob*, s.m. (sometimes written, *spůsob*).
- to establish, base itself, *zakládati se*.
- the whole, *celý*.
- belonging to the State, *státní*.
- organization, *zřízení*, s.n.
- township or family, *rod*.
- on undivided soil, *v nedílnosti půdy*.

<p>to cultivate, <i>vzdělávati</i>. to choose, <i>voliti</i> (<i>volba</i>, choice, from the same root, with the feminine termination <i>-ba</i> added). an elder, <i>starosta</i>. ruler, <i>vládyka</i> (root, <i>vlad</i>; by some of the Eastern Slavonic peoples used to signify a bishop). general, common, <i>společny</i>; root <i>pol</i>. See previous remarks.</p>	<p>father, <i>otec</i> (root <i>ot</i>. Cf. Gothic <i>atta</i>). to govern, direct, <i>spravovati</i>. the estate, <i>jmění</i>. to give orders, regulate, <i>nařizovati</i>. which were necessary, of which there was need, <i>čeho bylo potřeba</i>; although <i>potřeba</i> is a feminine noun, yet <i>bylo</i> coming before is used in the neuter by a common Slavonic idiom.</p>
---	--

EXERCISE XV.

The Emperor Rudolf II was not equal in mental gifts either to his father or his grandfather. Although on his coming to the throne he was barely twenty-four years of age, he was already dilatory and melancholy. Unwillingly he occupied himself with the affairs of State-government, but his predecessors had unwillingly abandoned them to others. His recreation consisted in scientific and artistic labours. He amused himself with chemistry and astronomy, painting and sculpture. He made great collections of antiquities; he kept at his palace many scholars and artists, especially the two most celebrated astronomers of that century, Tycho Brahe and afterwards Kepler. But science and art were to him nothing but a private recreation, which resulted in astrological superstitions and delusions about making gold. For the real promotion and development of science and art he took no care at all. In his youth he had been for a long time brought up in Spain at the court of his uncle Philip, and was entirely devoted to the

(Roman) Catholic religion, but the carelessness of his disposition did not allow him to labour heartily for the progress of the (Roman) Catholic Church, nor actively to prevent the further spread of Protestantism. And so in religious matters Bohemia remained for a long time in her previous condition.

to be equal, *rovnati se* (add negative to verb).

gift, *nádaní*; use noun in singular.

mind, spirit, *duch*, s.m.

neither—nor, *ani—ani*.

grandfather, *děd*.

although, *ačkoliv*.

he was twenty-four years old ;

translate, 'to him was (*bylo*, neut.) twenty-four of years.'

at most (lit. at first), *teprv*.

to be, *bývati* (iterative aspect of *býti*).

already, then, *již, tehďáž*.

dilatatory, *vahavý*.

melancholy, *trudnomyslý* (*trud—mysl*).

unwillingly, *nevad*.

to occupy oneself, *zanášeti se*.

affair, *záležitosť*. The termination of the instr. plur. in *-mi* is one of the characteristics in which Bohemian is nearer to Old Slavonic than Russian; the latter has only a few of these forms.

government, direction, *zprava*.

State, belonging to, *státní*, adj.

predecessor, *předce*.

to abandon, *zanachávati*.

recreation, favourite pursuit, *zálibení*.

scientific, *vědecký*.

artistic, *umělecký*.

to amuse or occupy oneself,

baviti. Cf. Russ. за-бавление.

In the original, for emphasis,

t is added to the past tense of the verb.

chemistry, *chemie*.

astronomy, *hvězdárství* (from

hvězda, a star; Russ. звѣзда).

painting, *malování* (from Ger.

malen; *Ge-mälde*).

sculpture, *řezání*.

to make, lay the foundations

of, *založiti*.

great, *veliký*.

collection, *sbírka*, s.f. (fr. *sbírati*,

to collect; *brati*, see 5th

conj. of verbs; same as Lat.

fero, and used very widely.

Cf. Russ. со-боръ, a cathed-

ral; собрание, a collection).

various, *rozličný*.

antiquities, in original memorable things, *památiny*; a word already explained.

to maintain, *chovati*.

many scholars, *mnohé učení*.

an artist, *umělec*.

celebrated, famous, *slavný*

(*slava*, glory, not the derivation of the name of the Slavs, as is sometimes said, that being rather from *slovo*, a word, and thus comes to mean the men who speak intelligibly, in contradistinction to the German, who was primarily to the Slavs *němec*, or the dumb man).

an astronomer, *hvězdář*; *-ar*, frequently the termination for the male agent, but more frequent in Bohemian and in the Western Slavonic languages than in the Eastern.

Tycho Brahe (1546-1601).

Kepler (1571-1630).

afterwards, *později*.

art, *umění*, s.n.

were only, *nebyly ničím jiným než*. Remember the rule on the use of two negatives.

personal or private, *osobní* (*osoba*, a person, fr. *o-sob-a*, same root as *sobě*. &c.).

amusement, *zábava*. Cf. *baviti*. besides that, *mimo to*.

to result, *převrhovati*; *-vrch*, summit, as we say 'culminated in.'

also, *také*.

superstition, *pověra*. Observe use of *po*.

delusion, *klam*, s.m.

the manufacture, *dělán*.

gold, *zlato*, s.n.

real, *skutečný* (*skutek*, a fact).

promotion, *povznesení*, s.n., a verbal noun; *po-vz* (*voz*, up) *-něž*, to bring, to carry.

development, spreading, expansion, *rozšíření*.

to exert oneself, *starati*.

thereby, *přilom*; derived from *při* and *lom*.

during, *za*. For the use of *za* to denote duration of time see prepositions. It is also a common use in Polish.

youth, *mládí*, s.n.

longer, *dělsi*.

bring up, to maintain, *chovati* (vide supra).

Spain, *Španely*. The form is the plural, used in so many names of countries.

uncle, *strýc*.

to devote, *oddati*.

entirely, *cele*, a word the root

<p>of which has already been explained.</p> <p>carelessness or sluggishness, <i>liknavost</i>.</p> <p>disposition, <i>pohava</i>.</p> <p>neither—nor, <i>ani—aniž</i>.</p> <p>very much, <i>přiliš</i> (root <i>liš</i>).</p> <p>Cf. Russ. лишній, superfluous; слиш-комъ, too much, &c.</p> <p>warmly, eagerly, <i>horlivý</i>; root <i>hor</i>, to burn.</p> <p>to labour, exert oneself for, <i>zasazovati</i> (root <i>sad</i>, to sit).</p> <p>Other aspect <i>zásaditi</i>.</p> <p>progress, <i>prospěch</i>.</p> <p>to protect, <i>brániti</i> (vide supra), or keep off; restrain.</p> <p>vehemently, vigorously, <i>hrubé</i> (lit. coarsely).</p> <p>further, <i>další</i>, comp. of <i>dálný</i>, far (-<i>ný</i>, like <i>ky</i>, common adjectival termination; root <i>dal</i>).</p> <p>spread, <i>šíření</i>, s.n.</p>	<p>Protestantism, <i>protestantsví</i>. In the original, <i>šíření se protestantsví</i>, where the noun keeps the reflexive, which belongs to the verb. Cf. such expressions in Polish:</p> <p style="text-align: center;"><i>Ale serce u mokojców Niezleknie sie Turków.</i></p> <p>‘But the hearts of the young men do not fear the Turks.’ In some of the Slavonic languages we still find the nouns governing the same cases as their verbs, and preserving other characteristics of verbs. Cf. Lat. <i>Quid hanc rem tactio</i>.</p> <p>and so (on this account), <i>protož</i>.</p> <p>religious matters (matters of religion): matter, <i>věc</i>.</p> <p>during a long time, <i>za</i> (with accus.).</p> <p>condition, <i>stav</i>.</p>
---	--

EXERCISE XVI.

Literature, the fruits of which from the invention of printing were abundantly spread among the people, comprehended at that time the more widely-spread branches of popular knowledge, but did not display either originality or solidity; there were but few writers whose works rose above mediocrity. The

language only was purified, and attained great flexibility in prose compositions. After Daniel Adam Veleslavin, the most prominent author of the age of Rudolf on the Utraquist side, the Bohemian Brothers performed the greatest services for the purity of the language. From their school issued the first profound investigator of the Bohemian language, Jan Blahoslav, and the Utraquist Bible, in six parts, edited by the Brothers, is an eternal monument of the beauty of the Bohemian language. The Bohemian schools of the time, in the superintendence of which the local communes especially exerted themselves, were adequate for the diffusion of the most necessary knowledge of letters. The teachers appointed over them by the University of Prague, in the larger and smaller towns, were almost throughout masters of arts and bachelors of arts of those branches of learning; but the university itself remained in a neglected state, and did not offer opportunities for the acquisition of scientific knowledge corresponding to the progress at that time in other countries. For all the pleasure taken by the Emperor Rudolf in artistic amusements, the fine arts were also in a state of decay. There were no native architects at all who could be compared to their predecessors of the time of Vladislav II; certainly the most important buildings were for the most part erected by architects summoned from foreign countries.

fruit, *plod*, s.m.

discovery, *vznalezení*, s.n.

the press, *tisk*; *tisk-arna*, printing-press. In Polish instead of a native name we have *drukarnia*, and in Russian типография.

vigorously, abundantly, *snáze*.

An instance of an adverb

compounded of a preposition and substantive; *snaha*, f., effort, exertion.

to spread, *rozšiřovati* (root *šir*); people, *lid*, s.m. (same root as Ger. *Leute*). Translate, 'spread themselves into the people,' *v lid*, as we might say in Lat. *in populum*.

to comprehend, embrace, *osáh-nouti* (fr. *o* and root *sah*, to touch.) Cf. Russ. до-сугъ, при-суга. The *nu* disappears in the past tense, as is so often the case with verbs of this conjugation.

at that time, translate by gen. widely-spread, manifold, *roz-manitý*.

branches, *odvĕtví*, s.n.; use singular.

popular, *lidský*.

knowledge, *vĕdĕní*, s.n.

to develop, *vynikati*, *vyniknouti*.

The first aspect will be the correct one to use here, i. e. 'was in the habit of developing originality,' *původ-nost*.

solidity, thoroughness, *důklad-nost* (root *klad*).

few writers; use *malo* with gen. plur. of noun.

work, *dĕlo*, s.n.

to rise, *povznĕsti* (*po-vz-nĕsti*, verb of the 1st conj.).

above, *nad*.

mediocrity, *prostřednost*. The root of this verb has been already explained.

only, *toliko*.

purify, *třítiti* (probably derived from the Ger. *treiben*).

to attain, *dosahovati*; takes genitive, as many other compounds of *do*.

prose (adj.), *prosaický*.

flexibility, *ohĕbnost* (root *heb*).

Cf. Russ. гнб.

after, *vedle*.

Veslavín (translate by *z Vele-slavína*, the way in which the place from which a man took his title is expressed, corresponding to the Ger. *von* and the Fr. *de*, as is also customary in Polish. Thus cf. the full name of the Bohemian patriot Harant, author of an interesting account of travels in the Holy Land. Harant, *z Polžic a z Bezdružic*; so also the rhymster, *Lomnický z Budče*).

prominent, *přední*.

writer, *spisovatel*.

of Rudolf; use the possessive form of the adj., *Rudolfov*.

the Utraquist side, *strana pod obojí*, from *oboje*.

to perform the greatest services; translate, 'had the greatest merit.'

merit, *zásluha*.

purity, *čistota*, s.f.

language, *řeč*, s.f., in the sense of style, form of expression,

- as opposed to *jazyk*, the mere spoken language.
- brother, *bratr*, m. See remarks s. v. on the irreg. plur. of this word.
- school, *škola*.
- profound, thorough, *důkladný*.
- investigator, *badatel*.
- of Bohemian language; translate, 'in Bohemian grammar,' *mluvnictví*, as used in an abstracted sense; the word for an actual grammar is *mluvnice*; root *mluv*.
- in six parts, *sestidílný*.
- Bible, *Bibli*, s.f. Add *Králická*, Utraquist.
- to edit, publish, *vydati*.
- is, translate 'has become,' *státi se*.
- monument, *pomník*. Put this and the accompanying adjective in the predicative instr.
- beauty, *lepotařnost*, or beauty of construction *lep-* and *tvar-*. Cf. adj. *tvárný*, well-made, well-formed.
- local or belonging to the towns, municipal, *městský*.
- the commune, *obec*, s.f. especially, *největ*.
- to exert oneself, *pečovati*. The root of this word explained supra.
- superintendence, *opatření*.
- to be adequate, to furnish sufficient, *stačiti dosti*.
- for, *k*.
- necessary, *potřebný*.
- literary, belonging to letters, *literní*; especially with the idea of rudimentary knowledge.
- knowledge, *známost*, s.f.; *zna*, to know.
- a teacher, *učitel*. See previous notes on root *uc*, which enters into so many words.
- to appoint, settle, *dosazovati*; other aspect, *dosaditi* (root *sad*, same as Lat. *sedeo*).
- over them, or to them, *k nim*.
- of Prague, *Pražský*.
- were; use iterative.
- a town or city, *město*, s.n.
- a little town, *městečko*. The Bohemian language, as is the case with all the Slavonic languages, is rich in the use of diminutives.
- almost (lit. quickly), *skoro* (same root as English *sheer*).
- throughout, *veskrz* (two prepositions compounded).
- master of arts, *mistr*. Abridged from *magister*, and illustrating the way in which

- our own 'mister' has been formed.
- bachelors of arts, *bakalář* (from the mediaeval Latin, which has been introduced into so many languages; the probable origin of the word is *baccarius*, a man who keeps cows. See glossary to Stubbs' *Select Charters*).
- Study, branch of learning, *učení*, s.n.
itself, *sam*.
- to neglect, *zanedbati za-ne-dbati*;
use past part. pass., which has almost become an adjective.
- to offer, *poskytovat* (negative in composition with verb).
- opportunity, *příležitost*, s.f.
for, *k*.
- acquisition, *nabytí*, s.n.
knowledge, *známost*.
- corresponding to, *dle*.
- progress, advance, *pokrok* (*po-krok*).
- of that (time), *tehdejší*.
- for all the pleasure taken by the Emperor, *při všem zalíbení císaře*. See remarks on use of *při* among Prepositions.
- was (found itself), *nacházelo se*.
the fine arts, *výtvarné umění*.
decay, *úpadek* (root *pad*, to fall).
native, *domácí*.
there were (translate, 'there was not of').
at all, *naskrze*.
to compare, *rovnati*.
predecessor, *předchůdce* (root *chod*, to go).
important, famous, *znameníty*;
root *zna*, to know. Cf. *známost*, and many other compounds.
building, *stavba*.
for the most part, especially, *jmenovitě* (*jméno*, a name).
to erect, *říditi* (translate, 'architects summoned erected,' thus avoiding the passive form in agreement with the genius of the Slavonic languages).
for the most part, *většim dílem* (vide supra).
architect, builder, *stavitel*.
to summon, *povolati*.
a foreign country, *cizina*. Cf. this termination with such forms as *polština*, the Polish language, &c.

EXERCISE XVII.

King Vladislav meanwhile at Buda, only now in the 31st year of his reign, had married Anne de Foix, the niece of the French king, Louis XII, who first gave birth to a daughter named Anne and afterwards a son, Louis (1505). Vladislav, having secured from the Hungarian and Bohemian Estates that this son, even while a child, should be acknowledged as his successor in the kingdoms, came in the year 1509, for the third time after his election to the Hungarian kingdom, to Prague, where Louis, who was just three years of age, was crowned. During his stay in Bohemia, which on this occasion lasted a whole year, he again raised a commotion among the Estates in his presence and again issued orders contrary to the wishes of the cities. The displeasure of the burghers increased even more in consequence of an accidental occurrence, when there arose at Prague a sanguinary quarrel between the Hungarian nobles and their dependents and the common people, in which sixteen Hungarians lost their lives; whose death the king avenged by many cruel executions, flaying, impalement, and other kinds of torture, up to that time unheard of in Bohemia.

meanwhile, *mezitím*.

Buda, *Budín*; now more often called Pesth from the more modern part of the duplicate city.

only now, *teprv*.

to marry, *vstoupiti v mauželství* (from the O.H.G. *mál, mahal*; cf. also the Polish *małženstwo*, and cognate words).

to enter upon marriage with, *s* with instr.

niece, *sestřenice* (daughter of the sister).

French, *francouzský*.

Louis, *Ludvík*.

to give birth to, *poroditi*; add *jemu*.

a daughter, *dcera*, s.f.

by name, *jménem*.

to obtain, *obdržeti*.

of the Estates (translate, 'in the Estates'; Estate, *stav*, m.).

Hungarian, *Uherský*.

- even while a child (translate, 'in childish age'; childish, *dětský*).
- accepted, acknowledged, *přijal*. See previous explanations of this word: the past part. pass. of *přijíti*, to take, now more often found in the form *přijmouti*, the *m* representing a suppressed nasal.
- successor, *nastupce* (root *stup*, step; hence, *follower*).
- kingdom, *království*.
- to arrive, come, *přijíti* (fr. *jíti*, to go). See 1st conj.
- in the year; use gen. for point of time.
- the third time, *potřetí*.
- election, *zvolení*.
- to Prague, *do Prahy*.
- three years of age; use adjective *tříletý*.
- to crown, *korunovati*.
- during, *za*.
- stay, *přebývání*, s.n.
- this time, *tentokrát*. Cf. corresponding forms, *stokrát*, a hundred times.
- to last, *potrvati*.
- the whole, *celý* (our *whole*; Ger. *heil*).
- to raise, take, *vzítí*.
- commotion, *rozepře*.
- among, *mezi*.
- to order, issue orders, *vypo-
věděti*.
- against, *proti*.
- the wishes, *přání*, s.n.
- displeasure, *nelibost*.
- burgher, *měšťan*.
- to increase, *rozmnožiti se*.
- accidental, *nahodilý*.
- occurrence, *příhoda*.
- to arise, break out, *strhnouti se*; use the past tense without the syllable *nu*. The 2nd conj. is here used for the momentaneous aspect.
- sanguinary, *krvavý* (*krev*, flood; Lat. *cru-or*; Gr. *κρέας*).
- riot or outbreak, *rvačka*, from the root *rva*, to tear.
- nobleman, *dvořan* (*dvorec*, the court; *dvořák*, the man who takes care of the court, the porter; also in names of places, as *Králové dvůr*, *Königinhof*, Queen's Court).
- dependents, attendants, *čeled*, f., used collectively, but may also be used in plural.
- common, *obecný*.
- sixteen Hungarians were killed, *16 Uhrů přišlo o život*. The neuter is used, although *šestnáct* is really a feminine substantive by a Slavonic

<p>idiom already explained. It occurs more frequently when the verb is at the beginning of the sentence.</p> <p>to lose life, <i>přijíti o život</i>, a German idiom which has been adopted by Bohemian, and has been already explained.</p> <p>death, <i>smrt</i>.</p>	<p>to avenge, <i>pomstíti</i> (revenge, <i>pomsta</i>).</p> <p>severe, <i>ukrutný</i>.</p> <p>execution, <i>poprava</i>.</p> <p>flaying, <i>dřeni</i>. Cf. Gk. <i>δέπειν</i>.</p> <p>impalement, <i>strkání na kůl</i>.</p> <p>up to that time, <i>dotud</i>.</p> <p>unheard of, <i>neslýchaný</i>, a past part. converted into an adj. (<i>slýchati</i>, to hear frequently).</p>
---	--

EXERCISE XVIII.

In such a position of Bohemian affairs, and even greater disturbances in the kingdom of Hungary, Sultan Soliman undertook the new expedition against Hungary with his whole military force, which had been expected with terror for so many years. King Louis, seeking assistance in all the neighbouring countries, anxiously demanded also in the Bohemian Estates that they should aid him with the muster of troops promised during his stay in the country. But in this also the highest authorities showed themselves ill-disposed to him. Leo of Rožmitál wished to bring the matter before the Assembly of the country, but it was not at all possible to call it together on account of the exasperation of the (different) parties one against the other. In answer to the eager desire of the king, the Rosenberg party finally resolved, from a meeting held among themselves, to go to the assistance of the king. Another party then agreed to the same course, but purposely protracted the military preparations till it was too late. When first a certain part of the Bohemian auxiliaries, in a scattered manner proceeding to Hungary, had forced their way to the king's camp, a battle was fought, through the senseless arrogance of

the Hungarian lords at Muháč, with a force of the Turks about twelve times stronger. The Christian soldiery suffered in the course of an hour-and-a-half a complete sanguinary defeat; and King Louis, who was twenty years of age, perished in the retreat, being drowned together with his horse in a deep stream which had overflowed (Aug. 29th).

in, *při*.

such, *takový*.

position, *postavení*.

disturbance, *zmatek*.

to undertake, *předsevzítí* (*předse-vzítí*, to take).

many, *kolik*, taking the gen. after it.

terror, *strach*.

to expect, *očekavati*.

expedition, *u-tok*.

to, *na*; used like the Lat. *in* with the accusative.

force, *moc*.

to seek, look for, *hleděti*.

assistance, *pomoc*; use plural.

neighbouring, *okolní* (*okolo*, around; cf. *kolo*, a wheel).

to demand, *žádati*.

in the, *na*.

to aid, *přispěti*.

muster of troops, *veřejná hotovost*.

to promise, *slíbiti*.

stay, *přebývání*.

authority, magistrate, *uředník*.

ill-disposed, *neochotný*; use here the predicative instr.

Leo of Rožmitál, *Lev z*, with the genitive. This form of Bohemian proper names has already been explained.

to bring before, *vznášeti*.

before, *na* (lit. to).

assembly of the country, *sněm zemský*; *sněm*, the assembly.

-em is connected with *jíti*,

to take, the *n* being merely

added, as is seen in other

forms of the verb. The cor-

responding Polish term is

Sejm.

to call together, *sbíratí*. Cf.

Russ. *соборъ, собрание*.

it was not possible, *nebylo možné*.

altogether, *však*.

on account of, *pro*.

exasperation, *rozeznění* (*roz-zlo*, evil).

a party, *strana*.

one against the other, *na sebe*.

in answer to, *k*.

eager, *snažný* (*snaha*).

desire, *žádost*.

BOHEMIAN GRAMMAR

- rozstříti* part., which has become an adjective; *trousiti*, to scatter.
- lehouti* proceed to, *láhouti*.
- do* to, *do*, in the sense of 'up to';
- do* the use of the prepositions
- do* must be carefully noted in
- do* Bohemian as in the other
- do* Slavonic languages.
- do* way to force, *doraziti* (fr. *raz*,
- do* a blow; translate, *dorazila*
- do* These verbs compounded
- do* with *do* have a great
- do* tendency in Slavonic to
- do* repeat the preposition be-
- do* fore the noun).
- leženi* the camp, *leženi*; the place
- leženi* where the troops lie, in the
- leženi* same way as the Ger. *Lager*.
- leženi* the battle was fought. See
- leženi* remarks made previously on
- leženi* *svěsti*.
- nesmyslný* insensate, senseless, *nesmyslný*.
- zpučnost* arrogance, *zpučnost*, s.f.
- panstvo* nobility, gentry, *panstvo*, s.n.
- pan* A collective term; *pan*, a
- pan* gentleman; a word only
- pan* found in the western branch
- pan* of the Slavonic languages.
- u* at Muháč, *u* with gen. I have
- u* preserved the Bohemian
- u* form of the word, which is
- u* more often written *Mohacs*,
- u* according to the Hungarian
- u* spelling, the place being in

<p>the southern part of Hungary and situated among marshes.</p> <p>a Turk, <i>Turek</i>.</p> <p>about, <i>asi</i>.</p> <p>strong, <i>silný</i> (<i>sila</i>, s.f., strength).</p> <p>Christian, <i>křesťanský</i>.</p> <p>to suffer, <i>utrpěti</i>.</p> <p>in the course, <i>během</i>, instr. of <i>běh</i>.</p> <p>of an hour-and-a-half (translate, 'half of the second hour.' Cf. Ger. <i>anderthalb</i>; the construction is common enough in the Slavonic languages).</p> <p>complete, <i>úplný</i> (<i>plenus</i>).</p> <p>defeat, <i>poražka</i>, s.f. (<i>raz</i>, a blow).</p> <p>twenty years old, <i>dvadceřletý</i>.</p>	<p>to perish, <i>zahynuti</i>.</p> <p>in, <i>na</i>.</p> <p>to be drowned, <i>utonouti</i> (the root is <i>top</i>, but the <i>p</i> has dropped out in this aspect as in Russian. Cf. <i>potopa</i>, the deluge).</p> <p>a horse, <i>kůň</i> (in O.S. <i>кoмoнъ</i>, a word the origin of which is very difficult to explain).</p> <p>deep, <i>hluboký</i>.</p> <p>stream, <i>potok</i> (root <i>těci</i>, to flow).</p> <p>which had overflowed, <i>rozbahňiti</i>; use past part. pass., <i>bahňiti se</i> means 'to become marshy.'</p> <p>August, <i>Srpen</i>; gen. of point of time (lit. reaping-month).</p> <p><i>srp</i>, a sickle.</p>
--	---

EXERCISE XIX.

The Bohemian throne, which by this unexpected occurrence had again become vacant, should, according to the hereditary compacts with the house of Austria, have devolved to the Emperor Frederick III. But the Bohemian Estates had since the war with King Sigismund grown accustomed to settle the kingdom, so that on this occasion there was no thought of keeping these agreements, especially when the Emperor Frederick, although he sought his rights, took no trouble to ensure their being attained. The husbands of the two sisters of the deceased King Ladislaus, William, Duke of Saxony, and Casimir, King of

Poland, pretended to a right of succession. Also some other German princes put in their claim to election, and the French king, Charles VII, gave the Bohemians large sums, on condition that they should elect as king his younger son Charles. But at this time all other views were overpowered by the grateful inclination of the majority of the people to a man who in the most successful way had up to the present time laboured for the public good. George Poděbrad, who till now had been the regent of the kingdom, was chosen king with great unanimity (March 8, 1488). Nor did the party of the (Roman) Catholics resist this election, for the most prominent of them, such as Zdeněk Konopištský of Steinberg, and John, son of Ulrich of Rosenberg, had been formerly on good terms with him, having been raised by him to high offices.

the throne, *trůn*.

sudden, *nenadálý*.

vacant, *osiřelý* (fr. root *sir*, an orphan, a poor or bereaved person).

according to, *dle*.

hereditary, *dědičný*.

agreement, compact, *smluva* or *smlouva*, s.f. (root *mluv*; cf. *mluviti*, to speak).

the house, *dom*, s.m.

of Austria, *rakouský* (vide supra for explanation of this word).

should have, *byl by měl*. For idiomatic uses of *míti* see p. 47.

to devolve, fall, *připadnouti*.

up to until, *potud*.

the settlement, *osazování* (from the verb *osazovati*, iterative of *osaditi*).

to get used to, *navyknouti*; use past tense with omission of syllable *nu*.

there was no thought of, *nemyslilo se*; put *se* early in the sentence.

keeping, *zdržení*.

on this occasion, *tentokrát*.

although, *ač*.

to seek, to direct oneself, *tahnouti*; drops *nu* in the past tense.

to ensure, *vjednati*.

legality, validity, *platnost*.

rather, more especially, *vice*.

to pretend to, *hlásiti se k*, i. e.

- to give their voices for (*plas*, a voice). presumptive, pretended, *domnělý* (root *mne*, as in *pomník*, *pamět*, and similar words).
- husband, *manžel*. For explanation of the root of this word vide supra.
- right, *práv*.
a sister, *sestra*.
deceased, *zemřelý*. Cf. verb *mřiti*, to die.
William, *Vilém*.
Duke of Saxony, or one of the Saxon dukes, *z vévod*, *vévoda* (lit. leader of the host; *dux*, *Herzog*).
Saxon, *Saský*.
Casimir, *Kazimír*.
Polish, *polský*.
some, *několik*; use the gen. plur. after the adverb, the verb will then be in the neuter sing.
to put in a claim, *ucházeti se*.
to election (translate, 'concerning'), *o zvolení*.
Charles, *Karel*.
to give, *podávati*.
profit, sum, gain, *výhoda*.
on condition that, *když by*.
elect, *zvoliti*.
as, *za*.
grateful, *vděčný* (root Ger. *Dank*).
- inclination, *náklonnost*, s.f. (*na* and root *klon*, to bend).
majority, *většina*, s.f.
clever, excellent, successful, *zdárný*.
up to the present time, *dotud již*.
to labour, *pracovati*.
for, *k*.
good, *dobrý*; use neuter as a substantive.
George, *Jiří*. Cf. Russ. Юриі, the Gr. Γεώργιος having a soft pronunciation of γ.
Poděbrad: translate *Poděbradsky*, from Poděbrad.
up to this time, *posavadní*; an adjective made from the adverb *posavad*.
regent of the kingdom, *zeměsprávce* (*země* and *prav-*).
chosen king, *zvolen za krále*.
unanimity, *jednosvornost* (*svornost*, unanimity, harmony).
March, *Březen* (lit. month of the birch-tree; use gen. for point of time).
for (Roman) Catholics here use *strana pod jednou*, s., the party for communion in one kind. Cf. *pod oboji*.
resist, *odporovati* (same root as Russ. перепь, Ger. *sperrén*; also found in Old English).
election, *volba*.

prominent, <i>přední</i> .	formerly, <i>za předešlého času</i> .
of them, <i>z nich</i> . Cf. Lat. <i>ex iis</i> .	on good terms (translate, 'in goodwill'), use <i>vůle</i> , s.f.
of Sternberg, <i>ze Šternberka</i> .	to raise, <i>povyšiti</i> .
John, <i>Jan</i> .	high, <i>vyšoký</i> .
Ulrich of Rosenberg, <i>Oldřich z Rosenberka</i> .	office, <i>důstojenství</i> , s.n.

SOME BOHEMIAN PHRASES

Pod jednu hodinu nebudeme hotovi. We shall not be ready for an hour.

Dlouho na noc pracovati. To work long into the night.

Na kvap. In haste.

Na usviř. In the early dawn.

Na omylu jest. He is in error.

Člověk o jedné noze. A man with one leg.

Volal naň. He called after him.

Po slaných jídlech chce se píti. After salt food one wishes to drink. (Observe the impersonal *chce se*, a common form in the Slavonic languages.)

Po srážce desíti ze sta. With a discount of ten per cent.

Co chceš na mně? What do you wish with me?

Po otci příbužný. Related on the father's side.

S někým o něco radu brati. To take counsel with some one about something.

Mně na škodu. To my disgrace.

Obdovělá královna. The widowed queen.

Hleděli svevoli. They looked only to their own interest.

Syn ze sestry Otakarovy. The son of the sister of Otakar.

Župa dana v náhradu. The district was given as a reward.

K doživotnému užívání. For his use during his life-time.

Umluva o dvojí svadbou mezi dětmi. The arrangement concerning the double marriage among the children. (In *dětmi* we observe the preservation of the Old Slavonic instrumental case,

which is also preserved in Russian in a few words; for the declension of *dítě*, a child, see p. 12.)

Trpěval nouzi v pokomu a v oděvu. He endured hardship in his food and clothing.

nouzi, s.f., hardship, necessity.

Proti zemanům svých okolí. Against the country gentlemen of their neighbourhood.

okolí, s.n., the surrounding country, neighbourhood.

Přišla již žádoucí doba. The longed-for time had come at last. (*žádoucí*, an instance of a participle which has become an adjective.)

Zpupnost měšťanstva německého. The arrogance of the German burgher class.

Uvedení země v pokoj a pořádek. The bringing of the land into peace and order.

Vy mi pochlebujete. You flatter me.

Nemáte zač. You have no reason (lit. 'You have not for what.' See remarks on the compounded prepositions on p. 26).

Ja vám za to stojím. I guarantee it you.

Pojďte sem. Come hither.

Půjdeme na procházku. Let us go for a walk.

Hřmi, blyská se. It thunders and lightens.

Sníh padá. The snow falls.

Dnes nastává bouřka. There will be a storm to-day.

Dnů ubývá. The days get shorter (lit. 'It takes off from the days').

Nebe se mračí. The sky grows dark.

Kolik jest hodin? What o'clock is it? (lit. 'Of how many hours is it?').

Již jest šest hodin. It is now six o'clock. (Observe the rule for numerals after *pět*. The Slavonic numerals still retain much of the old nature of the numerals, i.e. **they are nouns.**)

Na mých hodinkách jest půl druhé. By my watch it is half-past one (lit., as in German, 'half towards two').

Mohou již býti tři čtvrtě na jedné. It may already be a quarter to one o'clock.

Bilo deset hodin. It has struck ten (lit. 'It has struck ten of hours.' Observe the neuter, very frequently used at the beginning of the sentence. A corresponding idiom may be found in the other Slavonic languages).

Idou vaše hodinky dobře? Does your watch go well?

Ještě není pozdě. It is not yet late.

Rozednívá se. The day is breaking. (Cf. the verb *dníti se*, to be dawning, and the signification of *roz* in composition.)

Máme dnes prvního. We have now the first day of the month.

Žadné pravidlo bez výjimky. No rule without an exception.

Uvidím-li, že je tak, budu rád. If I see it is so, I shall be pleased.

Já budu čekati až přijde. I will wait till he comes (lit. 'till he will come').

Ptáci létají pod oblaky. The birds fly under the clouds.

Ryby plovou v vodách. The fish swim in the waters.

U večer jest soumrak. In the evening is twilight.

Vějíček věje lísě. The wind blows softly. (*Věje* from *váti*, to blow; a verb of the 1st conj., 7th class. Cf. *znati*.)

Bouře poráží stromy. The storm throws down the trees.

bouře, s.m., a storm.

Jablko jest kulaté. The apple is round.

Kohout ráno zpíva. The cock crows in the morning.

Vejce kryje se skořápkou. The egg is covered with a shell. (*Vejce*, root *ej*, to which the diminutive *ce* is added; cf. Ger. *Ei*; Russ. *яйце*. The addition of *v* at the beginning of words with a vowel is very characteristic of some of the Slavonic languages. Thus cf. Bohemian *varhany* (only used in the plural), an organ;

and for the interchange of *v* with *l* see *vavřín*, a laurel; *krye*, from the irregular verb *krýti*, to cover.)

Slávič zpívá nejlíbezněji ze všech. The nightingale sings the most agreeably of all. (*Slávič*, lit. 'the dusky-coloured bird.')

nejlíbezněji, form of the superlative adverb.

Kollár a Palacký byli přátelé. Kollar and Palacky were friends.

Biskup Eberhard muž honěný více v žoldněřství než ve věcech duchovních. Bishop Eberhard, a man practised rather in soldiering than in spiritual matters.

Pod ztrátou hrdla. Under the penalty of the loss of their neck; i.e. their heads cut off.

K čemuž když ještě přidružil se neurodný rok, prisěl hlad veliký. In addition to which, when already an unproductive year associated itself, there came a great famine.

přidružití, v.a., to associate.

Ve mládém králi Váslavovi II vzkvétala naděje nově veliké budoucnosti pro zemi českou. In the young king Wenceslaus II blossomed the hope of a new great future for the Bohemian land.

vzkvétati, other aspect *vzkvésti* (root *květ*, a flower).

Odebral se na své statky. He betook himself to his estates.

Když vyšel z komnaty královny, jest zatčen a uvržen do vězení. When he had come out of the king's chamber, he was seized and thrown into prison.

<p><i>vyšel</i>, šel, irreg. past of <i>jíti</i>, to go. See pp. 37, 49.</p> <p><i>komnata</i> (Lat. <i>caminata</i>; also used in Russian).</p>	<p><i>královny</i>. See possessive adj., p. 17.</p> <p><i>zatčen</i>, from <i>zatknouti</i>.</p> <p><i>uvržen</i>, from <i>uvrhnouti</i>.</p>
--	---

Ve věšší věži která pozděj sloula Bílá věž. In the highest tower, afterwards called the White Tower.

sloula, fr. *slouti*. See p. 40.

SELECTED PASSAGES

ILLUSTRATING SPECIAL IDIOMS AND SYNTAX.

Rozmnožení pevných hradů v zemi a obezdění měst za krále Václava I, i ještě četneji za Přemysla Otakara II bylo příčinou, že se zachovávání pomezního hvozdu k obraně zemské stálo již skoro docela zbytečným.

The increase of strong castles in the land and the fortification of cities in the time of King Wenceslaus I, and more numerously in the time of Přemysl Otakar II, was the cause that the preservation of the frontier forest to protect the country became soon quite superfluous. (Observe here *příčinou*, pred. instr.; *zachovávání*, the ordinary form of the verbal noun.)

Vesnice německé zakládaly se podobným způsobem a s podobnými svobodami jako osady české v době předtím, jen s tím rozdílem, že jim dopuštěno jako městům souditi se právem německým.

The German villages were established in a similar manner and with similar liberties as the Bohemian settlements in the time before this, only with this difference, that they were allowed, like the towns, to be judged by German law.

V kapitolách, pečlivě rozříděných, dovozuje hříšnost tance, jak škodí duši i tělu, proč není dovolen vždy a každému.

In the chapters carefully arranged, he shows the sinfulness of dancing, as it injures soul and body, wherefore it is forbidden (lit. 'not permitted') everywhere and to each.

<i>rozříděných</i> , past part. pass. of		<i>škoditi</i> , to injure, 4th conj., takes dative.
<i>rozříditi</i> , to arrange. See the effect of <i>roz</i> in composition.		
		<i>není</i> , compounded negative form of the verb 'to be.' (See p. 59.)

Jedním pramenem ku poznání toho budou nam Dějiny národu českého a jiné spisy historické, v nichž Palacký na rozličných místech usudky své pronáší a názorů svých se dovolává.

One source for the knowledge of this will be to us the *History of the Bohemian People* and other historical writings, in which Palacký in various places produces his opinions and gives scope to his views.

jedním pramenem, pred. instr., as one source.

budou, the third person plural of *býti*, to be, originally a present with a future signification, because *býti* is a perfective verb; the present is now *jsem*, borrowed from another root.

Dějiny, f., only used in the plural, history. For explanation of *nichž* see p. 25: the *ἠφελκυστικόν*, to borrow a term of Greek grammar, is put with the noun after pre-

positions with the various cases; the *ž* is an enclitic, which intensifies the meaning. Cf. Russ. *же*, and Gr. *γε*. *na rozličných*, in various. Observe use of *na*, one of the most delicate of the Slavonic prepositions.

pronáší, 3rd sing. pr., from *pronášeti*, to bring forward. *dovoláváti*, to permit, give scope to; verbs compounded with *do* frequently take a genitive (see list of prepositions used in composition).

Od času Boleslava II nepanoval také žádný panovník český tak rozsáhlé říši jako Přemysl Otakar II, hned po smrti otce svého Václava.

From the time of Boleslav II there did not also rule any Bohemian prince such an extensive kingdom as Přemysl Otakar II, immediately after the death of his father Wenceslaus.

nepanoval. Observe the tendency of Bohemian (and the Slavonic languages generally) to incorporate the negative with the verb.

žádný. See p. 29.

rozsáhlé říši, genitive because of the negative going before. *po smrti*. See rules for the use of prepositions.

Toliko Lužice dostala se brzy po nastoupení Otakarově na delší čas od Čech, udělena byvši od něho v léno markrabí Brandenburskému Ottovi co veňo sestry Přemyslovy, však také jak se zdá za pomoc poskytnutou v minulé válce s Uhry.

Soon only Lusatia remained, after the accession of Otakar, for a longer time apart from Bohemia, having been separated from it as a fief of the Marquis of Brandenburg, Otho, and a dower for the sister of Přemysl, as appears, for assistance furnished in the past war with the Hungarians.

brzy, another form of *brzo*.
na delší čas. Cf. *in* with accusative in Latin.

Čechy, occurring as the name of the country in a plural form. See p. 15.

udělena, past part. pass.

byvši, past part. of *býti*.

v léno, *in feodum*.

co, as. Cf. such expressions as *co pan*, as master.

se zdá, seems (lit. gives itself forth).

poskytnutou, accus. of past part. of *poskytnouti*. The past parts. of the 2nd conj. generally ends in *t*. For the two forms cf. Ger. *gefürchtet* and *geschrieben*.

Překážky této nyní nebylo ano zdálo se některý čas jakoby se měla říše německá na vždy rozpadnouti.

This impediment now did not exist, but it seemed once as if the German empire would fall to pieces for ever.

těto, gen. of *ten*. Observe the tendency of the Slavonic languages to suffix this intensive particle¹. See p. 27.

jako-by, the suffix *by* being the sign of the conditional mood.

měla. Cf. the future signifi-

¹ For Russian see Sobolevsky, *Lectures on History of Russian Language*, p. 158.

tion of <i>mti</i> , like our 'I have to do it.'	<i>roz</i> in composition; <i>padnoliti</i> , the momentaneous aspect or perfect aspect of.
<i>rozpadnouti</i> . See the force of	

Děti se světlými vlasy, modrýma očima a světlou pletí.

Children with light hair, blue eyes, and light complexion.

<i>děti</i> , irreg. plur. of <i>dítý</i> . For the use of the dual adjective	with the dual noun for euphony, see p. 14.
---	--

Strana jeho v Němctch nepokusila se ani o volbu noveho krále.

His party in Germany made no further attempt concerning the election of a new king.

<i>Němec</i> , Germany, from <i>Němci</i> (lit. Germans), the name of the inhabitants being used for that of the country. Observe the negative compounded with the	verb in the Slavonic manner. <i>o</i> , prep. with the accus., concerning. <i>král</i> , king. For the derivation of this word, see p. 83.
--	--

Strana papežská, jejíž nejmocnější hlavou byl Otakar jako předtím otec jeho, znala se k Vilémovi hollandskému, jehož moc byla však malá.

The papal party, of which the most powerful head was Otakar, as his father before this, identified itself with William of Holland, whose power was altogether little.

<i>nej</i> , sign of the superlative. <i>hlavou</i> , pred. instr.	<i>znati se ku</i> , to be on the side of; to identify itself with.
--	---

dle možnosti.

As far as possible.

Několik jiných knížat německých.

And some other German princes.

<p><i>několik</i>, an adverb of quantity, takes the genitive after it. Cf. the Lat. <i>parum sapientiae</i>.</p>		<p><i>knížat</i>, gen. plur. of <i>kníže</i>. See nouns of the <i>-stems</i>. The word is connected with the Gothic <i>kunings</i>.</p>
--	--	---

Potom pak porazili Prušany v bitvě kterouž zastrašeni všichni nejřednější z lidu dali se pokřestiti.

After this they also defeated the Prussians, by which all the chiefs of the people, having been terrified, gave themselves to be baptized.

<p><i>zastrašeni</i>, past part. pass. of <i>zastrašiti</i>, to terrify. Observe the active used in</p>		<p>such a way as to avoid the use of the passive in <i>čkřestiti</i>.</p>
---	--	---

Za kterouž příčinou Konrad přijil k němu do Prahy.

For which cause Konrad came to him to Prague.

prijil, from *přijít*, to journey. See irregular verbs.

Všeho lidu jeho bylo 100,000, mezi nimiž 7,000 jezdců českých od hlavy az do paty oděných v železo.

Of his whole people there were 100,000, among which were 7,000 Bohemian horsemen, clad in armour from head to foot.

<p>Observe the idiom <i>bylo</i> mentioned on p. 63.</p>		<p><i>pata</i>, s.f., heel.</p>
--	--	---------------------------------

Blíž vpadu Moravy do Dunaje.

Near the fall of the Morava *into* the Danube.

Nebe bylo z počátku toho dne zakaleno ; než v tom vysvítilo slunce z oblaků a třpytila se korouhev svatého Václava jasně nad zástupy.

The heaven was at the beginning (lit. from the beginning) of that day troubled ; but meanwhile (or in it) shone forth the sun from the clouds, and the banner of St. Venceslaus fluttered clearly over the bands.

zakaliti, v.a., to trouble.

oblak, s.m., a cloud (lit. that which is drawn over something, and thus we may compare it with the Lat. *nubes*).

korouhev, s.f., the flag, banner.

Cf. Russ. *хоругвь*, a word probably of Tatar origin.

Miklosich, however, derives it from the Gothic *hrunge*.

slunce, s.n., the sun, the *ce* being really a diminutive and thus

explaining the gender. Cf.

otec, a masc. diminutive.

třpyt-ěti se, to shine ; reflexive verb, 3rd conj. ; like *hořeti*, to burn.

jasně, ordinary termination of the adverb ; derived from the adjective.

nad, prep., upon.

zástupy, from *zástup*, s.m., a band, a crowd ; here in the instrumental.

Ale pro mokrou zimu nezdařilo se toto předsevzítí.

But on account of the wet winter it was not possible to undertake it.

pro, with accus., on account of.

nezdařilo, verb compounded with negative, *zdařiti*.

Štatsněji než posavad prespival ve svých snáhách.

More fortunately than before succeeded in his efforts.

než, put after the comparative. Cf. Russ. *неже-ли*.

Volení císařů pokládalo se od některého času za pravo výhradně jen sedmi knížat, kteří zastávali dědičně tolikero čestných úřadů říšských.

The election of the emperors depended for some time on the exclusive right of only seven princes, who constituted the hereditary number of honourable officials of the realm.

<p><i>pokládati se za</i>; depended on <i>sedmi</i>. See rule about use of numerals, p. 22. <i>tolikero</i>, formed on the analogy of the collective numerals.</p>		<p><i>knížat</i>, gen. plur. of <i>kníže</i>. <i>říšských</i>, a non-Slavonic word borrowed from the Ger. <i>Reich</i> (vide supra).</p>
--	--	--

Mezi Rudolfem a knížaty stálo se hned usnešení, že všechna léna říšská uprázdněná od času, co na císaře Fridricha II byla uvalena klauza papežská, měla považována býti za uprázdněná posud, s nimiž by králi slušelo naložiti dle usnešení s kurfirsty.

Between Rudolph and the princes a compact had already been made that all fiefs released from the time when the interdict (or ban) of the Pope was laid upon the Emperor Frederick should be regarded as released till the King should treat with them according to the compact made with the electors.

<p><i>uprázdněná</i>, past part. pass. fem., from <i>uprázdniti</i>. <i>měla býti</i>, should be. See the</p>		<p>idiomatic use of <i>míti</i>. <i>slušelo</i>, it was fitting, becoming, from <i>služiti</i>.</p>
---	--	---

Papež Řehoř X, stavě se nejprve za prostředka mezi oběma stranama, uznal konečně Rudolfa Habsburského za pravého krále.

Pope Gregory X, having made himself at first a mediator

between the two sides, finally recognized Rudolf of Habsburg as the right king.

<i>stavě</i> , past part. act. of <i>státi</i> <i>se</i> .	employment of the dual here, now almost obsolete ; see p. 14.
<i>oběma stranama</i> . Observe the	

Proti tolikerym nepřítelům Otakar měl jediného spojence.

Against so many enemies Otakar had one ally.

<i>tolikery</i> , so many.	<i>spojenec</i> , s.m., ally.
----------------------------	-------------------------------

Pročez opozdil se, a než se k nepříteli přiblížil byly již cele Rakousy v rukou jeho.

On which account he delayed, and when he drew near the enemy all Austria was in his power.

<i>Rakousy</i> , another form of the Bohemian name for Austria.	Cf. <i>Čechy</i> , &c.
--	------------------------

Svolil i ke zmenšení věna nevěsty syna svého se 40,000 hřiven na 10,000, ve kterých místo levého pobřeží Dunaje v Dolních Rakousích mělo jemu postoupeno býti v zástavu toliko Chebsko.

He consented also to the decrease of the dower of the bride of his son from 40,000 *hřivnas* to 10,000, in addition to which, instead of the left bank of the Danube as a guarantee, only the district of Cheb would be given up to him.

<i>svoliti ke</i> , to consent to. <i>hřívna</i> , s.f., a mark (lit. a chain or necklace, from the ancient custom of using such for money). Miklosich, <i>sub voce</i> , compares the passage in Caesar, 'utuntur (Britanni)	aut aere aut taleis ferreis ad certum pondus examina- tis pro numo.' <i>misto</i> , an adverb used as a preposition. Cf. Russ. мѣсто. <i>pobřeží</i> , s.n., the bank (fr. <i>po</i> , prep., and <i> břeh</i>).
---	---

<p><i>Chebsko</i>, the district of Cheb (Ger. <i>Eger</i>), celebrated as the place at which Wallenstein was assassinated.</p>	<p><i>mělo jemu postoupeno býti</i>. Cf. the idiomatic uses of <i>míti</i>, already alluded to.</p>
--	---

Studiemi těmi zabýval se ve 20 až 24 roce věku svého, dříve než oddal se dějepisu; a ještě na sklonku života svého vyznával se zálibou o dotčeném výroku Baconově.

He occupied himself with these studies in the twentieth till the twenty-fourth year of his age, before he gave himself up to history; and still at the close of life he confessed a propensity for (lit. with a love concerning) the previous-mentioned saying of Bacon.

<p><i>zabývati se</i>, to busy oneself. <i>roce</i>, nom. plur. of <i>rok</i>, a year, -e being the termination of</p>	<p>the nom. plur. of nouns signifying inanimate things. See p. 7.</p>
--	---

Palacký vedle Šafařika byl nejhrodivějším obráncem slovanův naproti nevráživosti mnohých spisovatelů německých, kteří svůj národ vynášejí vysoko nad slovanský, jakoby tento byl plemenem sprostším, samou přírodou ustanoveným k nevzdělanosti a k porobě.

Palacký, next to Šafařik, was the most zealous defender of the Slavs against the hostility of many German writers who extol their people high above the Slavonic, as if the latter was a meaner race, destined by nature herself to want of culture and slavery.

<p><i>vedle</i>, prep., takes genitive. <i>vynášejí</i>, fr. <i>vynáseti</i> (<i>vynésti</i>), exalt. <i>plémě</i> (also <i>plemeno</i>). See p. 13; the <i>ě</i> of the nominative was originally a nasal, and this</p>	<p>explains the -<i>n</i> in the declension. Cf. Russ. время, and Polish <i>imię</i>. <i>sprostši</i>, comparative, from <i>sprostý</i>. <i>ustanoviti</i>, to destine.</p>
--	---

Nejprve vydal po r. 1630 spis Brána jazykův otevřena v němž sestavil mnoho tisíc slov v četných větách s počátku kratších, pak delších, tykajících se věcí takových jež pro svou zajímavost mladě myslí vštípniti se mohly.

At first he published in the year 1630 a work, *The Gate of Languages Opened*, in which he put together many thousand words, belonging to numerous things, at the beginning shorter, then longer, having to do with things of such a nature as on account of their attractiveness could be planted in young minds.

vy-dal, he published. See prepositions used in composition. Observe use of preposition *po*, with date.

otevřiti, to open.

mnoho tisíc ; *tisíc* is here the gen. plur. See p. 9.

delších, comp. of *dlouhý*.

tykajících, pres. part., gen. case plur., of *tykati se*, to concern.

věcí, gen. plur. of *věc*, s.f., a thing.

mohly, past tense, plur., from *moc*, to be able.

Než ani v tom oboru neskládaly se knihy vědecké, nýbrž na mnoze jen spisy potřebám lidu obecného určené, více překlady než spisy původní.

But no learned books were composed in that period, but for the most part only writings destined for the use of the common people, rather translations than original works.

ani, not even; as *ani ho nedám*, I do not even know him; *ani tolik vám nedám*, I shall not give you even

so much.

na mnoze, for the most part.

určiti, v.a., to appoint, destine.

více, rather, adv.

O vědeckém badání nebylo nikdež ani památky.

Of scientific investigation there was never a thought.

(Observe that two negatives do not make an affirmative.)

Přítáhl až k Marcheku blíž slavného bojiště někdy Kressenbrunnského.

He directed his march to Marchegg near the once celebrated battle-ground of Kressenbrunn.

<p><i>řítáhl</i>, for <i>řítáhnul</i>, the syllable <i>nu</i> being omitted. See remarks on p. 4. Cf. Russ. <i>погасъ</i>, he has expired, and other similar words.</p> <p><i>až k</i>, up to, as far as.</p> <p><i>blíž</i>, adv., used as a prep., near.</p> <p><i>bojiště</i>, s.n., the field of battle ;</p>	<p><i>-iště</i>, a favourite termination in the Slavonic languages for the place in which a thing occurs. This termination in the western Slavonic languages alternates with <i>-arna</i>, as <i>kavarna</i>, a coffee-house.</p>
---	---

Ten poznav krále, vykonal, na něm pomstu, na bezbraném, sbodav jej s jinými tovaryši svými, tak že zahynul ranami asi sedmnácti.

He, having recognized the king, wreaked upon him his vengeance, unarmed as he was (lit. upon the unarmed man), having stabbed him with his other companions so that he died with about seventeen wounds.

<p><i>sbodati</i>, to stab, past part. active.</p>	<p><i>sedmnácti</i>. See rule about numerals, p. 22.</p>
--	--

Porážka Čechů byla úplná, nebo padlo jich na bojišti 12,000, jiní zajati, jakož zejména nemanželský syn Otakarův Mikuláš, jiných mnoho utonulo v řece Moravě.

The defeat of the Bohemians was complete, for there fell of them on the field of battle 12,000. Others were taken, as especially the illegitimate son of Otakar Nicholas ; many of the others were drowned in the river Morava.

<p><i>zajati</i>, taken, originally past part. pass. of <i>zajiti</i>. to take,</p>	<p>but used as a simple adjective, and the verb <i>za-jiti</i> is</p>
---	---

supplied by the other aspects <i>zajimati</i> and <i>zajmouti</i> .	dropped out. Cf. <i>polopa</i> , the deluge.
<i>utonuti</i> , n.v., to be drowned, from a root <i>top</i> , the <i>p</i> having	<i>řece</i> , observe the change of <i>k</i> into <i>c</i> before <i>e</i> .

Vojsko jeho pálilo vsi a městečka bezbranná a konalo všelike ukrutnosti.

His soldiery burnt the villages and the undefended little towns, and committed all kinds of cruelties.

<i>vsí</i> , nom. plur. of <i>ves</i> .	root <i>kon</i> . Cf. <i>konec</i> , an end.
<i>bezbranný</i> , adj., undefended.	
<i>konati</i> , to commit (lit. 'to bring to an end'), from	<i>všeliký</i> , adj., of all kinds.
	<i>ukrutnost</i> , s.f., cruelty.

Obránců žádných v zemi nebylo, aniž věděl kdo jiné rady, než poddati se vítězi.

There were no defenders in the country, nor did any one know any other counsels than to submit to the conqueror.

<i>obránce</i> , m. (root <i>bran</i> , as in <i>bezbranný</i>).	one,' besides being interrogative. Cf. Russian use of <i>кто</i> .
For <i>žádných</i> see note on p. 29.	
<i>aniž</i> , not even.	<i>vítěz</i> , conqueror, supposed to be from Norse <i>viking</i> .
<i>kdo</i> , also used to express 'any	

Když po smrti Matyáše, zbouřila strana stavův českých na trůn povolala Fridricha Falckého, mněl Lomnický, že s vlky vstí třeba, i jal se krále jalového oslavovati rýmy svými které mezi chatrou nemalého zalíbení docházely.

When at the death of Matthias the rebellious party in the Bohemian States called to the throne the Palatine Frederick, Lomnický thought that he ought to howl with the wolves, and began to celebrate the empty king with his rhymes, which obtained no little popularity among the mob.

mněl, past tense of *mníti*, to think. See p. 51.
vyjíti, irreg. verb, to howl.
vlk, s.m., a wolf.

docházeti, to reach, as all verbs in *do*, takes the genitive case.
mezi, among, instr.
čhatra, s.f. the mob.

Druhý den na to, totiž v neděli dne 20 června, před večerem byli všichni odsouzení páni s hradu Pražského dovezeni na radnici Staroměstskou, a tu rozdílnými vězeními a strážemi silnými opatřeni. V pondělí pak, dne 21, v 5 hodin ráno, udeřeno bylo na hradě Prážském z kusu.

On the second day after this (lit. upon this, that is on Sunday, 20th of June), before evening, all the condemned lords were brought from the castle of Prague to the Town Hall in the Old Place, and there were kept in different prisons and with strong guards. On Monday the 21st, at five o'clock in the morning, a cannon was fired in the castle of Prague.

Neděle, s.f., Sunday.

Červen, m., June (lit. red month).

odsouzení, from *odsouditi*, to condemn (observe change of *d* into *z*).

dovezeni, from *dovézt*.

vézt, imp. verb, to lead, which must not be confounded with *vesti*. See irreg. verbs.

radnice, s.f., the Town Hall.

vězeními, from *vězení*, a prison, from a verb *vězeti*, to bind, which again must be distinguished from *vézt*, to lead.

opatřeni, past part. pass., from *opatřiti*, to watch.

pondělí, s.m., Monday (or *pondělek*); lit. the day after Sunday.

pak, then.

5 hodin (from *hodina*). Observe the construction; as in Russian, the numeral is in the accusative with *v*, and takes the gen. case plur. after it.

udeřeno bylo, it was fired (or struck), from *udeřiti*.

kus, a cannon.

READING LESSONS

VINETA¹.

Krajem břehův u Pomoří chodě
V rumích Slavie a rozmetu,
Nad Vinetou hledám Vinetu
V různobarvé moře toho vodě.
Mešto ! jehož někdy čest a loď
Křily celou zemskou planetu.
Vyviň trizubému klepetu,
Neptuna se ještě ke svobodě.
Století si vzdorovalo Dánům,
A jen bohové tě stačili
Přemoci, ty mořské Herkulanum !
Nešťastné si dvakrát město Slávy
Předně, že tě vlny zničily,
Pak že i vtip chce to křivohlavý.

JAN KOLLÁR (1793-1852).

The old Slavonic city in the island of Wolin, mentioned by Adam of
nen. (See Schafarik, *Slawische Alterthümer*, ii. 577.)

BOHEMIAN LITERATURE UNDER WENCESLAUS II.

Pilně pokračoval král Václav mezitím v dílech otce svého císaře Karla vztahujících se ku pěstování umění a nauk. Mezi stavbami od Karla začatými šlo předse jmenovitě stavění chrámu sv. Vítu na hradě Pražském vedením mistra Petra Parléře, a po něm syna jeho Jana. Po dokonání křtu doposud stojícího, přikročilo se roku 1392 k stavění vlastního kostela a později věž obrácené proti paláci kralovskému. Pro učení Pražské založil král Václav hned na začátku svého panování novou kolej nazvanou dle něho, a hlavní koleji císaře Karla vykázal větší dům na Novém tržišti čili náměstí sv. Havla (1383), kdež posud se nachází. Doba byla i jinak příznivá činnosti vědecké, jmenovitě také na poli národní literatury české. Tehdáž psal rytíř český Tomáš ze Štítvého svá důmynská rozjímání a naučení křesťanská, ve kterých o něco později Jan Hus byl jeho následovníkem. Pan Ondřej z Dubé psal o řádu práva zemského, mistr Křišťan z Prachatic o věcech lékařských; Hus stal se také nálezcem jednoduššího pravopisu českého; písmo svaté bylo tehož času již celé přeloženo do řeči české; v rouše básnickém skládal jmenovitě pan Smil Flaška z Pardubic své spisy mravokárné.

Vplyv literatury jevil se rostoucí vážností jazyka českého také v životě. Již za posledních let císaře Karla a mnohem více potom za panování Václava začalo se spisování listin stavu městského i vyšších, též zapisování důležitějších nálezů do desk jazykem českým. Obyvatelstvo české ve městech domáhalo se vždy více rovného práva národnosti své v obci i v kostelích; ano i v učení Pražském počaly se rozepře mezi národem českým a druhými, když onen, jakožto domácí, počtem schopných mužů vždy více se zmáhaje, začal (od r. 1384) usilovati o přiměřenější rozdělení míst v kolejích. Domáci dobrodinci obecného učení začali z tehož popudu svá

nadání k němu činiti s vyhrazením, aby jich účastni byli toliko mistři i studenti čeští. Tak povstala jmenovitě zvláštní kolleje národu českého (mezi léty 1399 a 1405).

V. V. TOMEK, *Děje Království Českého.*

(Born 1818, now Professor at University of Prague.)



THE BATTLE.

Dvě stě tisíc mužů stojí jako skály
 Dvě stě tisíc jako mrak se vstříc jim váli.
 Dvě stě tisíc mozků v každé straně hoří;
 Či mrak sdrť skála, či blesk skálu sboří.
 Čtyř set tisíc rety ku kletbě se šefí
 A jak očmi vlků jedni druhých měří.
 Mračivých tu vršků proti sobě dvě je
 A na každém vršku jeden král se směje.
 A s obou těch vršků sklami pozíráno
 A kral králi dává tajně dobré ráno.
 Tváře ty se mračí, zraky planou záští,
 Ale ruce tisknou v purpurném se pláští.
 Dva králové s vršků pokynuli dlaní
 Čtyř set tisíc vzduchem zahucelo zbraní.
 Deset tisíc vzduchem zaječelo vzkřiků
 Králi aplaudují jako na muziku.
 Na tisíce mužů klesá v prachu sěru
 Dívají se králi jako na operu.
 Na stotísce mužů druhé v útěk buší,
 Jeden král se směje: Dobře jim to sluší.

Jeden král se směje, vysě trůn si staví
Jej král druhý přišed, poklonami slaví.
Na tisíce mužů na pláni se válí
A dvě kráľů na zdraví si pije s geněraly.

J. V. SLÁDEK.

(Born 1845 ; formerly editor of journal *Lumír*.)

THE LIFE OF ST. VOJTĚCH.

Biskup pražský Dětmar umřel z ledna 982. Sněm zemský svolaný o volení nového biskupa do Levého Hradce (tam kde někdy Bořivoj I. první křesťanský v Čechách kostel založil), volil na jeho místo Vojtěcha, syna Slavnkova, prvního to Čecha, který na takové důstojenství povýšen byl. Důležitý muž tento nabyl v mládí prvního naučení v sídle otcově, hradě Libici nad Cidlinou a Labem, od pěstouna svého Radly a z částky též od ušlechtilé matky své Stržislavy. Potom (asi r. 972) poslán byv do slavné onoho věku školy magdeburské, svěřen jest tam péči prvního arcibiskupa Adalberta, kterýž otcovsky se ho ujav, jinocha krásného, vědochtivého i skromného brzy také naklonil se srdečnou k němu láskou. Za učitele měl tam Othericha, muzě, učeností proslulého a v celých Němcích váženého. Když pak na kněžství svěcen byl, udělil mu arcibiskup vlastní své jméno Adalbert, kterým napotom i až posavad u Němcův a západních Evropanův nazýván jest, ačkoli Čechové nepřestali jeho jako dřívě, Vojtěchem jmenovati. Po arcibiskupově smrti (20 června, 981) vrátil se do Čech kdežto zase ta bolest ho potkávala, že mu otec Slavnk téhož ještě léta umřel. Vstoupiv tudíž do služby při církvi pražské pod biskupem Dětmarem, přítomen byl i jeho smrti, a slyšel poslední hořekování jeho proto, že se mu ještě bylo nepodařilo, odvrátiti Čechy ode všech pohanských pověr a nespůsobův, i navěsti je k životou čistě křesťanskému. Lstost i horě umfrajícšo

biskupa pronikly hluboce jemnou duši jeho, a staly se volenému náměstku památkou, kterou řídil se namnoze v potomném svém chování.

FRANTIŠEK PALACKÝ.

(1798-1876; the celebrated Bohemian historian.)

LOVE AND DEATH.

Ten klid tak hluboký,
Jenž dýchá v ňader tvojich tichém vláni,
V svár cítí divoký
Se dívá pevně a dí bez ustání:
Že jako smrt je silné milování.

Však radost veselá,
Jež z dětinných tvých sladkých očí svítí,
Ta křídlem anděla
Vše struny srdce mého nechá zníti:
Že láska věčná, věčná jest jak žití.

A klid ten s radosti,
Smrt s žitím v lásky objímání stálém,
Toť sen je věčnosti,
V němž s lidskou touhou, nadějí a žalem
Se setkává bůh s naším idealem.

JAROSLAV VRCHLICKÝ.

(Born 1853.)

STORM AND PEACE.

Bourě a mír
Snění a vír,
Radost i žal
Peklo i eden,
Květen i leden
Co život dal!

JAROSLAV VRCHLICKÝ.

AN INTERIOR.

Učiním první něsmělý krok v tomto směru. Zde tobolka mého hrdiny, pana Alfréda N. Račte nahlédnouti—spatřujete několik oddělení a v nich nic; zde jedna zvláštní přihrádka—v ní opět nic—obrátime tobolku hřbetem vzhůru, zatřepeme ji—co vypadlo? Nic.

Ostatní personalia mohu teď stručně odbytí. Z části plynou již z prázdného úvodu. Štíhlé, skladné tělo—bledý, snivý obličej—na rtu hořký úsměv a světoborné myšlenky v hlavě. Na nohou pár odkvetlých pantoflí, na těle záhadné spodky a tři čtvrti kabátu, v ruce dvouloketní dýmka, z níž se dobývá poslední vzdech v podobě siného obláčku, obláček vystupuje do výše, zaokrouhuje se, fantasie vetkává do něho poslední krásný obrázek, ten bledne, zhasíná, rozplývá se s obláčkem—a dýmka i fantasie vychladly.

A jaký to obrázek rozplynul se s dýmem? Obrázek sličné, ale, chladné dívky.

Teď v hlavě pusto, jako ve světnici. Sěro záprádá se v prázdných koutech; šatnice zívá hladem; postel sní krásný sen o peřinách; přihrádce na knihy stýská se po knihách—a bída chechtá se přišerně se všech stran: Hi, hi! opustil tě svět, milenka tebou pohrdla, ale já tě neopustím, hochu můj.

SVATOPLUK ČECH.

(Born 1846.)

 IN A STRANGE LAND.

V loubí vinném v kruhu přátel
 Zasmušilý jinoch dlí;
 Touha, smutek v jeho tváři
 Ubledlé se zreadlí.

‘A ty ještě stále teskníš?’
 Dí mu přítel nejdražší
 Nemni na domov a připij,
 Víno žel ti rozplaší.
 On však neslyší, a dálný
 Domov jen mu v mysli tkví,
 ‘Pravý domov jest, kde shledal,
 Duch tvůj duchů bratrství.
 Což ti drahým jest jen místo,
 Hrstka země jen a prach?
 Nenahradí ti jich spolek
 Rovných myslí, rovných snah?’
 Nenahradí, nenahradí!
 Miluji ten prach, tu zem
 Každé stéblo s hrstí půdy
 Neunavným plápoem.
 S každým křem mé srdce srostlo,
 S každým pramenem můj dech,
 Každý kámen jest mi svatým,
 Drazí přátelé,—jsem Čech!

ELIŠKA KRÁSNOHORSKÁ.
 (Born 1847.)

BOHEMIA AFTER THE THIRTY YEARS' WAR.

A jakož panstvo bylo pravým tyranem poddaným svým, tak naproti tomu plazilo se v prachu před panovnskem absolutním, docela nepamětlivo svého někdejšího důležitého postavení v zemi. Šlechta česká, zcela se odcizivši národu cizincům za podnoží sloužícímu, přijímala za příkladem Němců od císařů nové titule knížat, hrabat a baronů; kdežto před tím vyšší šlechta v Čechách vůbec toliko pán slul, titule pak hraběcťho jen některé rodiny z ciziny přišlé užívaly. Vůbec panovalo

ve vyšších stavech takové bažení po cizotě, jakého v té míře před tím nikdy nebývalo. Bohatější šlechta táhla se do Vídně, kdež přjmy statků svých utrácela při nádherném dvoře císařském, od něhož záhy přijala i mrav a nepěkný kroj francouzský, který potom i u nižších stavů vytiskl pohodlný i slušný kroj staročeský.

Co se týče náboženství, opanovalo prostředky námi vylíčenými katolictví v celé zemi; jen sem tam potají skrývali se protestanti, scházejíce se ke službám božím do hor, lesů a nepřístupných míst, na oko pak katolky se činíce. Noví klášterové jsou zakládáni a mnichy i jeptiškami řádů v zemi dosud neznámých osazováni. Nad jiné pak rozšířili se v zemi jesuité, zakládajíce v četných místech nádherné koleje a všelijak obecnstvo k sobě vábíce. Oni s veliké části školství do svých rukou přivedli, aby hned od mládí na lid ve smyslu svém působili. Též při nedostatku světského kněžstva, který byl tak veliký, že ani všechny dosavadní fary obsazeny býti nemohly, chodili po venkově co misionáři, kázíce a po českých knihách slídíce, jež lidem co kacířské brali a pálili. Tak jmenovitě jistý Koniáš, jenž umřel teprv roku 1760, chlubití se obyčej měl, že on sám jich spálil na 60,000.

J. MALÝ (1811-1885).

DETAILS OF THE POET KOLLÁR.

Slavný básník Kollár byl skromný, v chování svém velice uctivý ke každému a přívětivý. K choti a milené dcerušce byl něžný a velice pozorný. Miloval nadšeně květiny, již jsou malé dítě, a pěstoval je málem až k smrti své.

K štědrému večeru r. 1851, posledního, který slavil s rodinou svou, chtěl mile překvapiti svou 'paní' a proto prosil vždy ochotnou paní Šemberovou o pěstování kvetoucí primula veris. Pod řasnatým pláštěm přinesl sám od zahradníka tři rozkvetlé

květinu a těšil se na radost vánoční. A o měsíc později odpočíval v rakvi, ověnčeny vavřínem! Kollár rád navštěvoval k důvěrné vlastenecké rozmluvě přítele svého Šemberu, u kterého se často scházivali přátelé české literatury a umění. V vynikajících vlastenců a učenců, spisovatelů a umělců slovanských, nejvíce ale českých, neopominul jeden shledati se s horlivým národovcem Šemberou, který každého srdečně uvítal a uhostil, jak nejlépe možno bylo. Neočekávaně časně úmrtí Kollárovo hluboce došlo tohoto citlivého přítele a velikého ctitele jeho. Stal se i dobrým rádcem paní Kollárové při prodeji vzácné knihovny. Když se náhodou dověděl jemností básník, že věrný přítel Šembera v rodině ročně slaví výroční den šťastného zasnoubení svého, věnoval k 18. Lednu 1851 významnou báseň. V přednášení vycvičená otcem Ludmilka se ustrojila do šatu Slovenky a večer s rodiči překvapila 'snoubence,' v tichém štěstí památného dne tonoucí. Velikou cenu má poetická pocta ta. Kollár v ní naznačil, že Šembera Čech se zasnoubil s Moravankou, a on sám jako Slovák s dceruškou se účastnil při oslavě dne výročního zasnoubení (r. 1840).

ZDEŇKA ŠEMBEROVA.

PALACKY AND THE FRANKFORT PARLIAMENT.

Dle tohoto programu zachoval se také Palacký, když ho došlo pozvání z Frankfurta, aby se účastnil příprav k ustrojení parlamentu zamýšlené říše Německé. K tomuto pozvání obpověděl Palacký dne 11. Dubna 1848, že mu nikterak vyhověti nemůže, a to předně poněvadž sám není Němec. 'Jsem Čech (prý) rodu slovanského, i se vším tím nemnohým co mám a co mohu, oddal jsem se zcela i na vždy ve službu svému národu. Tento národ malý sice jest, ale od jakživa zvláštní a sám o sobě stávající; panovníci jeho účastnili se od věkův ve svazku knížat německých, národ ale sebe sám

nikdy k národu Německému nepočítal, aniž také od jiných po všechna stolec kdy k němu byl počítán.' Za druhou pak příčinu, proč do Frankfurta jíti nemůže, to položil že snahy německé čelí k zemdlění ano konečně ke zničení Rakouska; kdežto Palacký z ohledu na drobné národy v těchto stranách kteréž potřebují sdružení, to za jisté uznává, že kdyby státu Rakouského nebylo již ode dávna, musili bychom v interessu Evropy, ba humanity samé přičiniti se co nejdříve aby se utvořil. Přepamátne toto psaní proslulo brzo u přátel i u nepřátel; jednak přívržencům Rakouska objasnilo důsledky snah německých, a jaké stanovisko by měli zaujmouti naproti nim,—bán Jelačíc táhna proti Maďárům, dal dotčená slova o potřebě Rakouska napsati na prapory své; jednak zase toto objasnění obojstranné situace podráždilo vášnivce německé, kteříž od té doby neustali obsypávati Palackého hanou a urážkami nesčíslnými.

JAN KALOUSEK.

(Born 1838. Professor in University of Prague.)

THE DEATH OF THE BLIND KING AT CRECY.

Strojilo se z toho k nové válce v Němcích o císařství; ale než ještě přišlo ke skutkům v poli, vypukla s větší silou válka mezi králem anglickým a francouzským, kteráž se několik let předtím začala o nástupnictví na francouzském trůně. Král Jan šel příteli svému na pomoc s 500 oděnci, i Karel syn jeho opět jej doprovázel. Vojska sobě nepřátelská sešla se u Kreščák (Creçy), ve Francouzích v den sv. Rufa (26. Srpna), Čechům nešťastný, v kterýž byl někdy král Otakar padl v bitvě proti Rudolfovi. Vojsko francouzské bylo umdleno od cesty, a mnoho jiného bylo mu na škodu. Ale páni francouzští nedali se zdržeti od boje, i udeřili na nepřítel neerozváživě; kterýž odraziv útok jejich, způsobil jim porážku. Král Jan stál se zástupem svým pozadu; i vidouce páni čeští, kteří s ním tu

byli, zě jest bitva ztracena, radili, aby hleděl zachovati život svůj a s jinými nastoupil cestu zpáteční. Ale král, jakkoli slepý na obě oči, divil se řeči takové: 'Toť bohdá nebude,' pravil 'by král český z boje utíkal,' dal koně svého přivázati ku koňům dvou rytířů udatných, pana Jindřicha mladého z Klimberka a Jindřicha Mnicha z Basilee, a takto v prostředku mezi těma oběma hnal do nepřítele; druzí Čechove za ním tam, kdež se bojovalo v nejhustší směsici. Tu obklíčeni jsouce přflišným množstvím nepřátel, zahynuli hrdinsky bojujíce až do smrti. Padlo padesát pánů a rytířů českých, mezi nimi i Král Jan, jakožto rytíř beze strachu. Syna jeho Karla, v kruté seči již raněného odvedli z rozkazu otcova někteří páni proti vůli jeho z boje, aby zachránili život dědicovi království.

V. V. TOMEK.

[Among the merits of the Bohemian language may justly be mentioned its capacity of expression, which renders it possible to translate foreign works with ease. Hence the Čechs have long been familiar with some of our most important authors. In 1811 Joseph Jungmann published his translation of Milton's *Paradise Lost*, and did a great deal to improve the poetical style of the language. He has other great merits as the author of *A History of Bohemian Literature* and of the great Bohemian Dictionary. About forty years ago a good translation of Shakespeare appeared by several hands. Versions of Burns' songs have been published by Mr. J. V. Sládek, and of Edgar Poe and others by Mr. J. Vrchlický. As a specimen of the capacity of the language we append the following version of the *Kubla Khan* of Coleridge, by Mr. J. V. Sládek, which may justly be styled a *tour de force*.]

KUBLAJ CHÁN.

VIDĚNÍ VE SNU.

Ve Xanadu dal nádherné
 Chán Kublaj sídlo postaviti
 Kde svatý Alf skrz nezměrné
 Tek' sluje v moře přiššerné,
 Kam slunce nezasvítí.

Na deset mil tak žrné lány
 Tam zdí a věžmi opásány.
 A byly sady s klikatými toky,
 V květ kadidlově stromy rozvity
 A byly lesy staré jak hor boky
 A slunečné v nich byly pažity.

Leč ach, té rokle hlubé splývající
 Přes cedrů stěnu svahů do zelena,
 Tak divé, svaté, kouzlem dýchající
 Jak místo pro démona, při měsíci
 Kde jen kdy lkala milující žena!
 A z této rokle v neustálém varu
 Jak zem by těžce oddýchala k zmáru,
 Zdroj mohutný co mžik hnán ze skaliska;
 V něm balvany, jak přerývaně tryská,
 Se v oblouk řítí krupobití tepem
 Neb jako zrní pod mlatcovým cepem;
 A ob mžik v tyto rojící se skály
 Se vody svaté řeky pozvedaly.
 Pět mil tok svatý spavým proudém plyne
 Se toče v hvozdy, v doly nádherné;
 Pak v ony sluje lidem nezměrné
 A s hukotem se v morě mrtvě řine;
 A hukotem Chán Kublaj sloucha v dálku
 Jak praotecké hlasy věští válku!
 Nádherného zámku stíny
 V prostřed vod se rysují
 Tam, kde slyšet do tišiny
 Zřídla hluk i ze slují.
 Byl to jak zázrak v teč divů středu
 Slunečný zámek a sluje z ledu!

Já vzácnou pannu u vidění
 Jsem spatřil jednou, loutnu měla;

To Abyssinka byla snivá
A na svou loutnu hrá a zpívá;
O Aborské to hoře pěla,
Kdybych v sobě oživiti
Moh' tu hru a píseň zvučnou,
Takou slast to ve mně vznítí,
Ve vzduchu že hudbou zvučnou
Ten zámek postavil bych zas,
Slunečný zámek, sluje z ledu!
Kdo slyšel, zřel by jejich jas
A Stěžte se! by vzkřikli v ráz;
Hle, zrak mu žehne, vlas mu vlaje!
V kruh omkněte jej po třikráte
A zavřte oči v bázni svaté:
Neb rositého požil medu
A napojil se mlékem ráje.

VOCABULARY

A.

a, conj., and.
absolutní, adj., absolute.
aby, conj., in order that.
ačkoli, conj., although.
Adalbert, proper name.
ale, conj., but.
anděl, s.m., an angel.
anglický, adj., English.
ani, conj., not at all, nor.
ano, conj., moreover.
aplaudováti, v.n., to applaud.
arcibiskup, s.m., an archbishop.
arcibiskupový, adj., of or belonging to the archbishop.
asi, adv., about.
až, conj., up to, before.

B.

ba, conj., verily; nay, more.
bán, a title of the governor of Croatia.
baron, s.m., a baron.
báseň, s.f., a poem.

Basilea, name of a place, Bâle.
básnický, adj., poetical.
básník, s.m., a poet.
bazěň, s.n., enthusiasm for, longing for.
bez (or *beze*), prep., without.
bída, s.f., distress.
biskup, s.m., a bishop.
blednouti, v.n., to grow pale.
bledý, adj., pale.
blesk, s.m., a glitter.
bohatý, adj., rich.
Bohda, interj., God grant.
boj, s.m., a battle.
bojovati, v.a., to fight.
bolest, s.f., sickness.
Bořivoj, name of a Bohemian prince.
bouře, s.m., a storm.
boží, adj., of or belonging to God.
brátí, v.a., to take.
bratrství, s.n., brotherhood.
brěh, s.m., a shore.
brzo, *brzy*, adv., soon.

Bůh, s.m., God; plur. *bohové*, gods.

bušiti, v.a., to drive, to beat.

býti, aux. verb, to be.

bývati, aux. verb, to be.

C.

celý, adj., the whole.

cena, s.f., value.

cesta, s.f., a journey.

Cidlina, s.f., name of a river.

církev, f., a church.

císař, the Emperor, Caesar.

císařský, adj., imperial.

císařství, s.n., the Empire.

cít, s.m., feeling.

cílivý, adj., feeling.

cizina, s.f., a foreign country.

cizinec, s.m., a foreigner, a stranger.

cizola, s.f., foreignization.

co, rel. pr., what; as.

ctitel, s.m., one who honours or respects.

Č.

čas, s.m., time.

časný, adj., early.

část, s.f., a part.

částka, s.f., a part; used adverbially, *z částky*, partly.

často, adv., frequently.

Čech, proper name, a Čech; a Bohemian.

Čechy, plur. f., Bohemia.

Červen, s.m., June.

Český, adj., Bohemian, Čech.

čest, s.f., honour.

četný, adj., numerous.

čili, conj., or.

činiti, v.a., to make.

činnost, s.f., activity.

čistě, adv., purely.

čnu, v.n., to begin; *čeli*, they have begun.

čtvrt, s.f., a quarter.

čtyr, card. num., four.

D.

dálný, adj., remote.

Dan, s.m., a Dane.

dáti, v.a., to give.

dávati, v.a., to give.

dávny, adj., of long time; *ode*

dávna, a long time ago.

đceruška, s.f., little daughter.

dech, s.m., breath.

dědic, s.m., an heir.

den, s.m., a day.

deset, card. num., ten.

deska, s.f., a record.

dětiný, adj., childish.

Dětmár, proper name of a man.

dílo, s.n., a work.

dítě, s.n., a child.

díti, v.n., to say.

dívati se, to look, to appear.

diviti se, refl. v., to be astonished.

dívka, s.f., a girl, a maiden.

divoký, adj., wonderful.

dlaň, s.f., a hand.

dle, prep., from.

dlíti, v.n., to linger.

do, prep., into, up to.

doba, s.f., period, time.

dobrodinec, s.m., a benefactor.

dobrý, adj., good.

dobyváti, v.a., to procure.

docela, adv., entirely.

dojítí, v.a., to seize.

dojítí, v.n., to come to ; past tense, *došel*.

dokonání, s.n., a finishing.

domácí, adj., native.

domáhati se, refl. v., to be eager for, to aspire to.

domov, s.m., home.

doposud, adv., still, up to this time.

doprovázeti, v.a., to accompany.

dosavadní, adj., up to that time.

dosud, adv., up to that time.

dočtený, adj., the above-mentioned.

dověděti, v.a., to inform ; *dověděti se*, to find out.

drahý, adj., dear.

dříve, adj., before.

drobný, adj., small, petty.

druhý, adj., other.

Duba, name of a place.

Duben, s.m., April.

důležitý, adj., important.

dům, s.m., a house.

důmyslný, adj., acute.

důsledek, s.m., inference, implication.

důstojenství, s.n., dignity, rank.

důvěrný, adj., confidential.

dva, dvě, card. num., two ; *dvě sň*, 200.

dvakrát, adv., twice.

dvouloketní, adj., two ells long.

dvůr, s.m., a court.

dýchatí, v.n., to breathe.

dým, s.m., smoke.

dýmka, s.f., a pipe.

E.

Eden, s.m., Eden.

Evropa, s.f., proper name, Europe.

Evropan, a proper name a European.

F¹.

fantasie, s.f. fancy.

farár, s.m., a priest, parson.

Francouszy, s. pl., France.

francouzský, adj., French.

¹ Words beginning with this letter are not of Slavonic origin.

Frankfurt, name of place,
Frankfort.

G¹.

general, s.m., a general.

H.

hana, s.f., abuse (Ger. *Hohn*).

Havel, proper name of a Bohe-
mian saint.

Herkulanum, s.n., name of a
city; Herculaneum.

hlad, s.m., hunger.

hlava, s.f., a head.

hlavní, adj., chief.

hleděti, v.a., to see, take care.

hluboce, adv., deeply.

hnáti, v.a., to drive.

hned, adv., at once.

hoch, m., a young fellow, boy.

hora, s.f., a mountain.

hoře, s.n., grief, sorrow.

hořekování, s.n., lamentation.

hořeti, v.n., to be eager.

hořký, adj., bitter.

horlivý, adj., zealous.

hrabě, s.m., a count.

hraběcí, adj., belonging to a
count.

hrad, s.m., a city; in its strict
sense, 'the inner fortified
part.'

hřbet, s.m., the back; *hřbetem*
vzhůru, inside out.

hrdina, s.m., a hero.

hrdinský, adv., heroically.

hrst, s.f., a handful.

hrstka, s.f., a handful (diminu-
tive).

humanita, s.f., humanity.

Hus, proper name, often erro-
neously spelt *Huss*.

hustý, adj., thick.

CH.

chechtati, v.n., to laugh loudly.

chladný, adj., cold.

chlubiti se, v. refl., to boast.

chod, s.m., a path.

choditi, v.n., to go.

choť, s.f., a wife.

chování, s.n., duty, position.

chrám, s.m., a church.

chťiti, v.a., to wish.

I.

I, conj., and, also.

ideál, s.m., ideal.

interest, s.m., interest, advan-
tage.

J.

jak, conj., as.

jako, conj., as.

¹ Found in no proper Čech words, its place being supplied by *h*; see
Grammar.

jakkoli, conj., although.
jakožto, conj., as.
jaký, int. pr., of what sort.
jakživ, adv., during all its existence.
Jan, proper name, John.
jazyk, s.m., language.
jeden, card. num., one; alone.
jednak, adv., partly.
jednoduchý, adj., simple.
Jelačić, proper name of a man.
jemnocitý, adj., tender-hearted.
jemný, adj., tender.
jen, adv., only.
jenž, rel. pr., which.
jeptiška, s.f., a nun.
ještě, adv., still.
jesuita, s.m., a Jesuit (sometimes *jesovita*).
jevíti, v.a., to show.
jinak, adv., otherwise.
Jindřich, proper name, Henry.
jinoch, s.m., a young man.
jiný, adj., another, other.
jistý, adj., a certain; also sure, true.
jíti, v.n., to go (past tense *šel, šla, šlo*).
již, adv., already.
jméno, s.n., a name.
jmenovati, v.a., to call.
jmenovitě, adv., especially.

K.

kabát, s.m., a coat.
kacířský, adj., heretical (Ger. *ketzer*).
kámen, s.m., a stone.
Karel, proper name, Charles.
katolictví, s.n., the Roman Catholic religion.
kázati, v.a., to preach.
každý, adj., each.
kde, adv., where.
kdež, adv., where, whereas.
kdy, adv., when, as.
klášter, m., a monastery.
klepeto, s.n., claw.
klesati, v.n., to sink.
kletba, s.f., a curse.
klid, s.m., peace.
Klimberk, name of a place.
kněžství, s.n., the priesthood (also *kněžstvo*).
kniha, s.f., a book.
knihovna, s.f., library.
kníže, s.m., a prince.
Kollár, proper name of a man.
Kollárov, adj., of or belonging to Kollár.
Kollárová, fem. form of Kollár, Mme. Kollár.
kollej (or *kolej*), s.f., a college.
konečně, adv., finally.
Koniaš, proper name of a man.
kostel, s.m., a church (Lat. *castellum*).

kout, s.m., a corner.
kraj, s.m., an edge, border.
král, s.m., a king.
královský, adj., of or belonging to the king.
království, s.n., a kingdom.
krásný, adj., handsome.
Krešlak, name of a place, Creçy.
křesťanský, adj., Christian.
křídlo, s.n., a wing.
Křištan, proper name, Christian.
křivohlavý, adj., crooked-headed.
kroj, s.m., a dress.
krok, s.m., a step.
kruh, s.m., a ring, circle.
krutý, adj., terrible.
krýti, v.a., to cover, to hide.
kštrý, rel. and int. pr., who, which.
ku, prep., to (also *k*).
kůň, s.m., a horse.
kůr, s.m., a quire.
kvéstí, v.n., to bloom, to flower.
květen, s.m., may.
květina, s.f., a flower.
květinka, s.f., a flower (dimin.).

L.

Labe, proper name, the Elbe.
láska, s.f., love.
Leden, s.m., January.

lékarský, adj., of or belonging to medicine.
les, s.m., a wood.
léto, s.n., a year, summer.
Levý Hradec, name of a place.
Libice, name of a place.
lid, s.m., people.
lidský, adj., of or belonging to the world or to people.
listina, s.f., a document.
literatura, s.f., literature.
litosť, s.f., sorrow.
loď, s.f., a ship.
loubí, s.n., a leaf (Ger. *Laub*).
Ludmila, dim. *Ludmilka*, proper name of a woman.

M.

Maďar, s.m., a Magyar, a Hungarian.
Magdeburgski, adj., of or belonging to Magdeburg.
málem, adv., a little time.
malý, adj., little.
matka, s.f., a mother.
měřiti, v.a., to measure.
měsíc, s.m., a month.
město, s.n., a city.
městský, adj., belonging to the burghers.
mezi, prep., among.
mezitím, adv., meanwhile.
mile, adv., in a kindly way.
milénka, s.f., a sweetheart.
miléný, adj., beloved.

milovant, s.n., love.
milovati, v.a., to love.
mír, s.m., peace.
míra, s.f., a measure.
misionář, s.m., a missionary.
místo, s.n., a place.
mistr, s.m., title given to a man who has taken his M.A. degree at the University.
míti, v.a., to have.
mladí, s.n., youth.
mladý, adj., young.
mnich, s.m., a monk; also a man's name.
mníti, v.n., to think about.
mnoho, adv., much.
mnohý, adj., much.
množství, s.n., a multitude.
moci, v.n., to be able.
Moravanka, s.f., a Moravian woman.
moře, s.n., the sea.
morský, adj., of or belonging to the sea.
mozek, s.m., the brain.
možno, adv., possibly.
mračiti, v.n., to grow dark.
mračivý adj., dark, cloudy.
mrak, s.m., a cloud, darkness.
mrav, s.m., morals.
mravokárný, adj., censuring morals.
museti, v.n., to be obliged (Ger. *müssen*).

můj, poss. pr., my.
muzika, s.f., music.
muž, s.m., a man.
my, pers. pr., we.
mysl, s.f., thought.
myšlenka, s.f., a thought (dim.).

N.

na, prep., in, on.
náboženství, s.n., religion.
nabyti, v.a., to gain, to receive.
nad, prep., upon.
nadání, s.n., expectation.
naděje, s.f., hope.
nádherný, adj., splendid.
ňadra, plur. n., bosom.
naššený, adj., enthusiastic.
nahlédnouti, v.a., to look into.
náhoda, s.f., accident, chance.
nahradati, v.a., to give pleasure.
nacházeti, v.a., to find.
nakloniti, v.a., to incline.
nalez, s.m., a notice, a finding.
nalezce, s.m., an inventor.
naměstek, s.m., a successor.
naměstí, s.n., a square or place.
namnoze, adv., frequently.
napotom, adv., afterwards.
naproti, prep., in opposition to.
napsati, v.a., to write on.
narod, s.m., people.
narodnost, s.f., nationality.
narodovec, s.m., patriot.
následník, s.m., a follower.

nastoupiti, v.a., to enter upon.
nástupnictví, s.n., a succession.
naš, poss. pr., our.
naučení, s.n., teaching.
nauka, s.f., science.
navésti, v.a., to bring.
navštěvovati, v.a., to visit.
naznačiti, v.a., to signify.
nazvati, v.a., to name, to call.
nazývali, v.a., *idem*.
něco, pr., somewhat (also adv.,
o něco).
nedostatek, s.m., a deficiency.
nechati, v.a., to permit.
nejlépe, adv., in the best way.
nejvíce, adv., especially.
někdejší, adj., former.
někdy, adv., once.
několik, ind. pr., some.
některý, pr., some.
Němec, proper name, a German.
německý, adj., German.
není, see p. 59.
nepamětlivý, adj., forgetful.
nepodařiti, v.a., not to grant.
nepřátelský, adj., hostile.
nepřestati, v.n., not to leave off.
nepřístupný, adj., inaccessible.
nepřítel, s.m., an enemy.
Neptun, s.m., the god Neptune.
nerozrůžlivé, adv., recklessly.
nesčíslný, adj., uncounted, innumerable.

nesmělý, adj., timid.
nespůsob, s.m., irregular life, immorality (also *-způsob*).
nešťastný, adj., unhappy, unlucky.
neunavný, adj., unwearied, un-resting.
neznámý, adj., unknown.
něžný, adj., tender.
nic, pr., nothing.
nikdy, adv., never.
nikterak, adv., by no means.
nižší, adj., lower, comp. of *nizký*, low, humble.
noha, s.f., a foot, sometimes leg.
nový, adj., new.

O.

o, prep., concerning, about.
oba, pr., both.
obec, s.f., a commune.
obecnstvo, s.n., a community, the public.
obecní, adj., communal, belonging to the commune.
objasnění, s.n., an explanation.
objasniti, v.a., to make clear, to explain.
objímání, s.n., an embrace.
obkličiti, v.a., to surround.
obláček, s.m., a little cloud.
obličej, s.m., a face.
obojsstranný, adj., double-sided.
obrázek, s.m., a picture.

obsaditi, v.a., to occupy.
obsypavati, v.a., to load.
obyčej, s.m., a custom.
obyvatelstvo, s.n., the population, a body of citizens.
očekávati, v.a., to expect.
od (or *ode*), prep., by, from.
odbyti, v.a., to eliminate, get rid of.
odciziti, v.a., to foreignize, make strange.
oddati, v.a., to give up.
oddělení, s.n., a division, section.
oděvec, s.m., soldier (lit. man clothed in armour).
odkvřilý, adj., faded.
odpočívati, v.n., to rest.
odpovědět, v.a., to answer.
odraziti, v.a., to beat off, repel.
odvésti, v.a., to carry off.
odvrátiti, v.a., to turn away.
ohled, s.m., a survey, regard.
ochotný, adj., willing.
oko, s.n., an eye; *na oko*, in appearance.
on, pers. pr., he.
Ondřej, proper name, Andrew.
onen, pr., that.
opanovati, v.n., to prevail.
opera, s.f., an opera.
opět, adv., again.
opominouti, v.a., to omit.
opustiti, v.a., to desert.
osazovati, v.a., to found.

oslava, s.f., a celebration.
ostatní, adj., remaining.
Olakar, proper name of King of Bohemia.
otcovsky, adv., in a fatherly way.
otcův, adj., of or belonging to a father.
otec, s.m., father.
Otheric, proper name of a man.
ověnčiti, v.a., to crown.

P.

padesát, card. num., fifty.
padnouti (*padl-*), v.n., to fall.
pak, conj., also.
palác, s.m., a palace.
páliti, v.a., to burn.
Palacký, proper name of a man.
památka, s.f., a recollection.
památný, adj., memorial, memorable.
Pán, s.m., mister, lord.
Paní, s.f., lady, madam.
panování, s.n., a rule.
panovati, v.a., to rule.
panovník, s.m., a ruler.
panstvo, s.n., the government.
pantofel, s.m., a slipper.
Pardubice, name of a place.
parlament, s.m., parliament.
Parléř, proper name.
péče, s.f., care.
peklo, s.n., hell.

- pěkný*, adj., beautiful, lovely.
peřina, s.f., a feather bed.
personalia, personal effects
 (humorously borrowed from
 the Latin).
pěstoun, s.m., foster-father or
 tutor.
pěstování, s.n., encouragement,
 taking care of.
peštovatí, v.a., to handle.
Petr, proper name, Peter.
pevně, adv., certainly, clearly.
pilně, adv., busily.
písmo, s.n., a writing.
pítí, v.a., to drink.
pláň, s.f., a plain.
planeta, s.f., a planet.
plápol, s.m., a flame.
plášť, m., a cloak.
plaziti, v.n., to crawl, to creep.
plniti, v.a., to fill.
plynouti, v.n., to flow, to swim.
po, prep., after, on, about.
počet, s.m., a number, calcula-
 tion.
počítati, v.a., to reckon.
počítí, v.a., to begin.
pocta, s.f., honour.
pod, prep., under.
poddani, s.m., subject.
podnož, s.f., a footstool.
podoba, s.f., a likeness.
podražditi, v.a., to irritate.
poetický, adj., poetical.
- pohanský*, adj., Pagan (Lat.
paganus).
pohrdati, v.a., to despise (past,
pohrdl).
poklon, s.m., a bow, a salutation.
pokračovati, v.a., to advance.
pokynouti, v.n., to beckon.
pole, s.n., a field.
položiti, v.a., to lay down.
pomoc, s.f., assistance.
Pomoří, s.n., the coast-land,
 Pomerania.
poněvadž, conj., because.
popud, s.m., an incentive.
poražka, s.f., a defeat.
posavad, adv., up to the pre-
 sent time (same as *posud*).
poslati, v.a., to send.
poslední, adj., the last.
postavení, s.n., a position.
postel, s.f., a bed.
posud, adv., till the present time.
potají, adv., secretly.
potkati, v.a., to reach, to come
 upon.
potkávati, v.a., to meet.
potom, adv., afterwards.
potřeba, s.f., need.
potřebovati, v.a., to stand in
 need of.
povaha, s.f., peculiarity.
pověra, s.f., superstition.
povstati, v.n., to rise up.
povyšetivati, v.a., to raise.

pozadu, prep., behind.
pozdě, adv., late; comp. *později*, later.
pozíráti, v.a., to look at, to gaze.
pozorný, adj., attentive.
pozvání, s.n., a summons.
prach, s.m., dust.
Prachalice, s. pl., name of a place.
pramen, s.m., a spring.
prapor, m., a flag, colours.
praviti, v.n., to say.
pravopis, s.m., orthography.
pravý, adj., true, right.
prázdný, adj., useless, empty.
Pražský, adj., of or belonging to Prague.
před, prep., before.
přednášení, s.n., bringing, offering.
předně, adv., at first.
předse, adv., before.
předtím, adv., before this.
překvapiti, v.a., to surprise.
přeložiti, v.a., to translate.
přemoci, v.n., to have the superiority.
při, prep., at.
příčina, s.f., a cause.
přičiniti, v.a., to cause.
příjem, s.m., the revenue.
přijímati, v.a., to take.
přijíti, v.n., to come to; past part. *přisly*.

přijíti, v.a., to take.
příklad, s.m., example.
přikročiti, v.a., to begin.
přilíšný, adj., excessive, very, great.
přímeřený, adj., corresponding.
přinéstí, v.a., to bring.
připiti, v.a., to drink.
příprava, s.f., the preparation.
přítel, s.m., a friend.
přítomný, adj., present.
privázati, v.a., to fasten.
přivěsti, v.a., to bring.
přívětivý, adj., friendly.
přivrženec, s.m., a supporter.
přiznivý, adj., favourable.
pro, prep., for.
proc, conj., on account of what.
prodej, s.m., a sale.
programm, s.m., a programme.
proníkatí, v.a., to penetrate.
prositi, v.a., to ask.
proslouti, v.n., to become celebrated.
proslulý, adj., celebrated.
prostředek, s.m., the middle.
prostředky, prep., among.
protestant, s.m., a Protestant.
proti, prep., opposite to, against.
proto, adv., on that account, because.
první, ord. num., first.

prý, as they say (see explanation in *Grammar*).

psaní, s.n., a writing, document.

psátí, v.a., to write.

půda, s.f., the earth, the ground.

purpurný, adj., purple.

působiti, v.a., to make, have effect.

pustý, adj., desert.

R, Ř.

račiti, to wish; imp. *raďte*, be so good, do me the favour.

rád, adj., glad.

řad, s.m., an order.

raditi, v.a., to advise.

rádce, s.m., an adviser.

Radla, proper name of a man.

radost, s.f., joy.

rakev, s.f., a coffin.

Rakousko, s.n., Austria.

Rakouský, adj., of or belonging to Austria.

rániti, v.a., to wound.

rano, s.n., morning.

řasnatý, adj., full of folds.

řeč, s.f., language.

ret, s.m., a lip (*rtu*).

říditi, v.a., to guide.

říše, s.f., an empire, kingdom (Ger. *Reich*).

ročně, adv., yearly, every year.

rod, s.m., a race.

rodič, s.m., a parent.

rodina, s.f., a family.

rok, s.m., year (sometimes denoted by the abbreviation *r.*).

roucho, s.n., clothing, form.

rovný, adj., equal.

rozdělení, s.n., a division, distribution.

rozepře, f., a quarrel.

rozjímání, s.n., meditation.

rozkaz, s.m., an order.

rozkvětlý, adj., full-blown.

rozmet, s.m., what is thrown away, rubbish.

rozmluva, s.f., conversation.

rozplašiti, v.a., to frighten away, banish.

rozplynouti, v.n., to melt, *to overflow.

rozplývati, v.n., *idem*.

rozšířiti, v.a., to extend.

Rudolf, proper name, Rudolph of Habsburg.

Ruf, proper name, Rufus.

ruka, s.f., a hand.

rum, s.m., a ruin.

růstí, v.n., to grow.

růžnobarvý, adj., rose-coloured.

rytíř, s.m., a knight (Ger. *Ritter*).

S.

s, prep., from, gen. with instr.

sám, pr., himself, &c.

sbořiti, v.a., to destroy.

- sdrůtiti*, v.a., to crumble, break.
sdrůžení, s.n., association, confederation.
se, refl. pr. of both numbers and all persons.
seč, s.f., slaughter.
sejítí se, to come together.
sem, adv., hither.
sen, n., a dream.
shledati, v.a., to find.
scházeti se, v.refl., to gather together.
scházívati, v.n., to come frequently together.
schopný, adj., suitable.
sice, adv., truly (Ger. *sicher*).
sídlo, s.n., seat, residence.
síla, s.f., strength.
silný, adj., strong.
siný, adj., blue.
situace, s.f., situation.
skála, s.f., a rock.
skládati, v.a., to compose.
skladný, adj., symmetrical.
sklo, s.n., glass.
skromný, adj., modest.
skrývati, v.a., to hide.
skutek, s.m., action.
sladký, adj., sweet.
Sláva, s.f., the goddess of the Slavs (a deity invented by Kollár).
Slavia, s.f., an imaginary name given by Kollár to all coun-
- tries in which a Slavonic language is spoken.
slaviti, v.a., to praise, to celebrate.
Slavnikov, proper name of a man.
slavný, adj., celebrated.
slепý, adj., blind.
slíčný, adj., beautiful.
slídniti, v.a., to follow up, to search for.
sloužiti, v.a., to serve.
Slovak, s.m., a Slovak.
Slovanský, adj., Slavonic.
Slovenka, s.f., a Slovak woman.
slovo, s.n., a word.
slušiti, v.n., to occur, happen, suit.
slušný, adj., suitable.
služba, s.f., service.
slyšeti, v.a., to hear.
smáti se, v.n., to laugh.
směr, s.m., object, tendency.
směsice, s.f., confusion.
Smil, proper name of a man.
smrt, s.f., death.
smutek, s.m., grief.
smysl, s.m., inclination.
snaha, s.f., an effort.
sněm, s.m., congress.
sněnit, s.n., dreaming.
snítí, v.n., to dream.
snivý, adj., dreaming.
snoubenec, s.m., a betrothed.

- součastníci*, v.a., to give a share in.
spáliti, v.a., to burn.
spatřovati, v.a., to survey.
spis, s.m., writing.
spisování, s.n., the writing.
spisovatel, s.m., an author.
spřisobiti, v.a., to assist, contribute to.
srdce, s.n., heart.
srděně, adv., heartily.
srděně, adj., hearty.
Srpen, s.m., August.
srůst, v.n., to grow.
stačiti, v.a., to grant.
stále, adv., continually.
stálý, adj., fixed.
stanovisko, s.n., a standpoint.
staročeský, adj., Old Čech.
stát, s.m., State government.
státi, v.n., to stand.
statí se, v.n. to begin, become.
stav, s.m., rank.
stávat, v.n., to stand; to be.
stavba, s.f., a building.
stavění, s.n., *idem*.
staviti, v.a., to place.
stéblo, s.n., a stalk.
století, s.n., a century.
stotisíc, card. num., one hundred thousand.
strach, s.m., fear.
strana, s.f., side, country.
strojiti, v.a., to get ready.
- stručně*, adv., briefly.
struna, s.f., a string.
stýskáti se, v.n., to trouble oneself, to be anxious about.
svár, s.m., strife, agitation.
svatý, adj., holy (abridged as *sv.*).
svazek, s.m., a confederation.
svěřiti, v.a., to entrust.
svět, s.m., the world.
světiti, v.a., to consecrate.
světnice, s.f., a room.
světoborný, adj., gathered from the world.
světský, adj., of the world, worldly; also secular clergy as opposed to regular.
svítiti, v.n., to shine.
svoboda, s.f., liberty.
svůj, poss. pr., his.
syn, s.m., a son.
- Š.
- šat*, s.m., dress.
šatnice, s.f., a cupboard where clothes are kept.
Šemberova, feminine form of the surname Šembera.
šeřiti, v.n., to look gloomy, stern.
šerý, adj., gray.
škoda, s.f., disadvantage.
škola, s.f., a school.
školství, s.n., a system of education.
šlechta, s.f., nobility.

šlechtic, s.m., a nobleman.

slouti, v.n., to be called (cf.

Gk. ἀκούειν, κλύειν, and Lat. *audire*).

šťástný, adj., happy.

štedrý, adj., bountiful; *štedry večer*, Christmas Eve.

šťěstí, s.n. happiness.

stíhly, adj., slender.

Štítíný, proper name of a man.

Štřezislava, s.f., proper name.

šudent, s.m., a student.

T.

táhnouti, v.a., to draw (also *táhovati*).

tajně, adv., secretly.

také, conj., also.

tako, conj., so.

takový, pr., such.

takto, conj., so.

tam, adv., there.

ted, adv., now.

tehďáž, adv., then.

tělo, s.n., body.

ten, dem. pr., this.

teprv, adv., first.

těšiti se, v.n., to enjoy oneself.

teskniti, v.n., to lament, be heavy.

tež, conj., also.

tichý, adj., quiet.

tisíc, card. num., a thousand.

tisknouti, v.a., to squeeze.

titul, s.m., title.

tvůřiti, v.n., to remain fast, to stick.

to, particle, that.

tobolka, s.f., the pocket.

toliko, adv., only.

Tomáš, proper name, Thomas.

tonouti, v.n., to sink, to be drowned.

touha, s.f., longing.

tři, card. num., three.

třizubý, adj., having three teeth.

trůn, s.m., throne.

tržičště, s.n., a square.

tudíž, adv., thence.

tvář, f., countenance.

tvůj, poss. pr., thy.

ty, pers. pr., thou.

týkati se, refl. v., to concern.

tyran, s.m., a tyrant.

U.

u, prep., by, at, among.

ublédlě, adv., in a pale manner.

účastniti, v.a., to take a part in.

účastný, adj., partaking in.

učenec, s.m., a scholar.

učení, s.n., instruction.

učenosť, s.f., learning.

učiniti, v.a., to make.

učitel, s.m., a teacher.

uctivý, adj., polite.

udatný, adj., brave.

udělití, v.a., to communicate, to give.

uďřítí, v.a., to attack.
uhostiti, v.a., to entertain.
ujíti, v.a., to take.
umdlěný, adj., weary.
umělec, s.m., an artist.
umění, s.n., knowledge.
umíráti, v.n., to die.
umřítí, v.n., *idem*.
úmrtí, s.n., death.
urážka, s.f., an attack.
usilovati, s.n., to exert oneself.
ušlechtilý, adj., noble-minded.
usměv, s.m., a smile.
ustání, s.n., ceasing; *bez ustání*,
 unceasingly.
ustati, v.n., to grow weary.
ustrojení, s.n., organization.
ustrojiti, v.a., to dress.
uštěk, s.m., flight.
utíkatí, v.n., to fly away.
útok, s.m., attack.
utráceti, v.a., to lose.
utvořiti, v.a., to create.
uvítati, v.a., to welcome.
úvod, s.m., introduction.
užívatí, v.a., to employ.
uznavati, v.a., to recognize,
 acknowledge.

V.

v, prep., in.
vábíti, v.a., to allure.
Václav, proper name, Wenceslaus.

valiti, v.a., to roll.
válka, s.f., war.
vánoční, adj., of or belonging to
 Christmas (Ger. *Weihnacht*).
vašnivec, s.m., a passionate or
 irritable person.
vavřín, m., laurel.
vážiti, v.a., to value, respect.
vážnost', s.f., importance.
ve, prep., in.
věc, s.f., a thing.
večer, s.m., evening.
věčnost, s.f., eternity.
věčný, adj., eternal.
vědecký, adj., of or belonging
 to learning, scientific.
vědení, s.n., direction.
vědochtivý, adj., desirous of
 knowledge.
věk, s.m., age.
velice, adv., very.
veliký, adj., great.
venkov, s.m., the country.
věnovati, v.a., to dedicate.
věrný, adj., true.
vesměs, adv., altogether.
velchý, adj., old.
veikavati, v.a., to twine, wreath.
věž, s.f., a tower.
vice, adv., more.
Vídeň, proper name, Vienna.
viděti, v.a., to see.
Vineta, s.f., an ancient city of
 the Slavs on the Baltic.

- vinný*, adj., belonging to wine or the vine.
vino, s.n., wine.
vír, s.m., giddiness.
Vit, proper name, Vitus, a Bohemian saint.
vlaní, s.n., agitation.
vlastenec, s.m., a patriot.
vlastenecký, adj., patriotic.
vlastní, adj., one's own, belonging to one.
vlk, s.m., a wolf.
vlna, s.f., a wave.
voda, s.f., water.
vojsko, s.n., an army.
Vojtěch, proper name, generally translated Adalbert.
volení, s.n., election.
voliti, v.a., to elect.
vplyv, s.m., influence.
vrátiti, v.a., to turn; *vrátiti se*, to return.
vršek, s.m., a hill, a height.
vstoupiti, v.n., to enter.
vstríc, prep., against.
však, conj., but.
vše, adv., altogether.
všecek, adj., all.
všelijak, adj., in all kinds of ways.
vtip, s.m., talent, genius.
vůbec, adv., in general.
vůle, s.f., will.
vychladnouti, v.n., to grow cold.
- vyučiti*, v.a., to instruct, arrange.
vyhověti, v.a., to suffice.
vykázati, v.a., to appoint.
vyličiti, v.n., to represent.
vynikati, v.n., to be conspicuous, prominent.
vypásti, v.n., to fall out.
vypražení, s.n., maintenance, support.
vypuknouti, v.n., to break out.
výroční, adj., yearly.
vyšší, adj., the highest, superl. of *vysoký*.
vystupovati, v.n., to come forth.
vytisknouti, v.a., to drive out, to force out.
vyvinouti, v.a., to untwist, untwine.
významný, adj., full of meaning, significant.
význačný, adj., valuable, rare.
vzdorovati, v.a., to defy.
vždy, adv., always; *na vždy*, for ever.
vzkřik, s.m., an outcry.
vztahovati, v.a., to direct.
- Z.
- za*, prep., during, for, after.
začatek, s.m., the beginning.
začítí, v.a., to begin.
záhadný, adj., problematical, dubious.

zahrádník, s.m., a gardener.
záhučítí, v.n., to howl, make a noise.
záhy, adv., soon.
zahynouti, v.n., to perish.
zachovati, v.a., to preserve.
zachrániti, v.a., *idem*.
zajeti, v.n., to ride forth.
zajmouti, v.a., to take.
založití (also *zakládati*), v.a., to found.
zamyšlený, past part., plunged in thought.
zamyslíti, v.n., to think.
zaokrouhlovati, v.a., to form into a wreath or ring.
západní, adj., western.
zapisování, s.n., a registration, an entry.
zapřadati, v.n., to begin to spin.
zase, adv., again.
zasnoubení, s.n., betrothal.
zasnoubiti, v.a., to betroth.
zastavěti, v.a., to support.
zášť, s.n., hatred.
zástup, s.m., a band.
zatřepati, v.a., to shake.
zbraní, s.n., arms.
zcela, adv., entirely.
zde, adv., here.
zdraví, s.n., health.
zdržeti, v.a., to restrain.

ze, prep., from.
zemdlení, s.n., weakening.
země, s.f., earth.
zemský, adj., earthy, belonging to the earth or country.
zhasinati, v.n., to be extinguished.
zmáhati, v.a. (also *zmoci*), to spread.
zničení, s.n., annihilation, destruction.
zničiti, v.a., to annihilate.
znítí, v.n., to resound.
zpatěkní, adj., backward.
zrak, s.m., look.
zrcadlití se, refl. v., to mirror oneself.
ztracený, past part. of *ztratiti*, to lose.
zvlastní, adj., special, independent.
zvolati, v.a., to call together, to summon.

Ž.

žal, s.m., sorrow.
že, conj., that.
žel, interj., pity that.
žítí, v.n., to live.
život, s.m., life.
živý, adj., living (fig. all alive with).

By the same Author.



Crown 8vo, price Six Shillings.

A GRAMMAR OF THE RUSSIAN
LANGUAGE.

WITH READING LESSONS.



CLARENDON PRESS BOOKS HISTORY

Greece, Italy, Egypt, etc

- Clinton's Fasti Hellenici**, from the LVith to the CXXIIIrd Olympiad.
Third edition. 4to. £1 14s. 6d. net. From the CXXIVth Olympiad to the Death of Augustus. Second edition. 4to. £1 12s. net. Epitome. 8vo. 6s. 6d. net.
- Clinton's Fasti Romani**, from the death of Augustus to the death of Heraclius. Two volumes. 4to. £2 2s. net. Epitome. 8vo. 7s. net.
- Greswell's Fasti Temporis Catholici**. 4 vols. 8vo. £2 10s. net.
Tables and Introduction to Tables. 8vo. 15s. net. Origines Kalendariae Italicae. 4 vols. 8vo. £2 2s. net. Origines Kalendariae Hellenicae. 6 vols. 8vo. £4 4s. net.
- A Manual of Greek Historical Inscriptions**. By E. L. HICKS.
New edition, revised by G. F. HILL. 8vo. 10s. 6d. net.
- Latin Historical Inscriptions**, illustrating the history of the Early Empire. By G. M^CN. RUSHFORTH. 8vo. 10s. net.
- Sources for Greek History** between the Persian and Peloponnesian Wars. By G. F. HILL. 8vo. Reissue, revised. 10s. 6d. net.
- Sources for Roman History**, B.C. 133-70. By A. H. J. GREENIDGE and A. M. CLAY. Crown 8vo. 5s. 6d. net.
- A Manual of Ancient History**. By G. RAWLINSON. 2nd ed. 8vo. 14s.
- Finlay's History of Greece** from its Conquest by the Romans (B.C. 146) to A.D. 1864. A new edition, revised, and in part re-written, with many additions, by the Author, and edited by H. F. TOZER. 7 vols. 8vo. 63s. net.
- The History of Sicily** from the earliest times. By E. A. FREEMAN. 8vo.
Vols. I and II. The Native Nations: The Phoenician and Greek Settlements to the beginning of Athenian Intervention. £2 2s. net.
Vol. III. The Athenian and Carthaginian Invasions. £1 4s. net.
Vol. IV. From the Tyranny of Dionysios to the Death of Agathoklés.
Edited from posthumous MSS, by A. J. EVANS. £1 1s. net.
- Italy and her Invaders** (A.D. 376-814). With plates and maps. Eight volumes. 8vo. By T. HODGKIN. Vols. I-IV in the second edition.
I-II. The Visigothic, Hunnish, and Vandal Invasions, and the Herulian Mutiny. £2 2s.
III-IV. The Ostrogothic Invasion. The Imperial Restoration. £1 16s.
V-VI. The Lombard Invasion, and the Lombard Kingdom. £1 16s.
VII-VIII. Frankish Invasions, and the Frankish Empire. £1 4s.
- The Dynasty of Theodosius**; or, Seventy Years' Struggle with the Barbarians. By the same author. Crown 8vo. 6s.
- Aetolia; its Geography, Topography, and Antiquities**.
By W. J. WOODHOUSE. With maps and illustrations. Royal 8vo. £1 1s. net.
- The Islands of the Aegean**. By H. F. TOZER. Crown 8vo. 8s. 6d.
- Dalmatia, the Quarnero, and Istria**; with Cettigne and Grado.
By T. G. JACKSON. Three volumes. With plates and illustrations. 8vo. 31s. 6d. net.
- Cramer's Description of Asia Minor**. Two volumes. 8vo. 11s.
- Description of Ancient Greece**. 3 vols. 8vo. 16s.

- The Cities and Bishoprics of Phrygia.** By W. M. RAMSAY. Royal 8vo. Vol. I, Part I. The Lycos Valley and South-Western Phrygia. 18s. net. Vol. I, Part II. West and West Central Phrygia. £1 1s. net.
- Stories of the High Priests of Memphis, the Sethon of Herodotus, and the Demotic Tales of Khannas.** By F. L. GRIFFITH. With Portfolio containing seven facsimiles. Royal 8vo. £2 7s. 6d. net.
- The Arab Conquest of Egypt.** By A. J. BUTLER. With maps and plans. 8vo. 16s. net.
- Baghdad during the Abbasid Caliphate, from contemporary sources.** By G. LE STRANGE. With eight plans. 8vo. 16s. net.

Archaeology

- Ancient Khotan.** Detailed report of Archaeological explorations in Chinese Turkestan carried out and described under the orders of H.M. Indian Government by M. AUREL STEIN. Vol. I. Text, with descriptive list of antiques, seventy-two illustrations in the text, and appendices. Vol. II. One hundred and nineteen colotype and other illustrations and a map. 2 vols. 4to. £5 5s. net.
- Catalogue of the Coins in the Indian Museum, Calcutta, including the Cabinet of the Asiatic Society of Bengal.** (Published for the Trustees of the Indian Museum.) Royal 8vo, with numerous colotype plates. Vol. I, by V. A. SMITH, 30s. net; or Part I (Early Foreign Dynasties and Guptas), 15s. net, Part II (Ancient Coins of Indian Types), 6s. net, Part III (Persian, Mediaeval, South Indian, Miscellaneous), 10s. 6d. net. Vol. II, by H. N. WRIGHT (the first section of Part II by Sir J. BOURNILLON), 30s. net (Sultans of Delhi, Contemporary Dynasties in India). Vol. III, by H. N. WRIGHT, 40s. net (Mughal Emperors).
- Ancient Coptic Churches of Egypt.** By A. J. BUTLER. 2 vv. 8vo. 30s.
- A Catalogue of the Cyprus Museum.** By J. L. MYRES and MAX OHNEFALSCH-RICHTER. 8vo. With eight plates, 7s. 6d. net.
- A Catalogue of the Sparta Museum.** By M. N. TOD and A. J. B. WACE. 8vo. 10s. 6d. net.
- Catalogue of the Greek Vases in the Ashmolean Museum.** By P. GARDNER. Small folio, linen, with 26 plates. £3 3s. net.
- The Cults of the Greek States.** By L. R. FARNELL. 8vo. Vols. I and II, with 61 plates and over 100 illustrations. £1 12s. net: Vols. III and IV, with 86 plates. £1 12s. net. (Vol. V in the press.)
- The Stone and Bronze Ages in Italy and Sicily.** By T. E. PEET. 8vo, illustrated. (In the press.)
- Classical Archaeology in Schools.** By P. GARDNER and J. L. MYRES. 8vo. Second edition. 1s. net.
- Introduction to Greek Sculpture.** By L. E. UFCOTT. Cr. 8vo. 4s. 6d.
- Marmora Oxoniensia, inscriptiones Graecae ad Chandleri exempla editae, cur. GUL. ROBERTS, 1791.** Crown 8vo. 3s. 6d.
- De Antiquis Marmoribus, Blasii Caryophylli. 1828.** 7s. 6d.
- Fragmenta Herculansia.** A Catalogue of the Oxford copies of the Herculanean Rolls, with texts of several papyri. By W. SCOTT. Royal 8vo. £1 1s.
- Thirty-six Engravings of Texts and Alphabets from the Herculanean Fragments.** Folio. Small paper, 10s. 6d., large paper, £1 1s.
- Herculansium Voluminum Partes II. 1824.** 8vo. 10s.

English History : Sources

- Baedae Opera Historica**, edited by C. PLUMMER. Two volumes. Crown 8vo, leather back. £1 1s. net.
- Asser's Life of Alfred, with the Annals of St. Neot**, edited by W. H. STEVENSON. Crown 8vo. 12s. net.
- The Alfred Jewel**, an historical essay. With illustrations and a map, by J. EARLE. Small 4to, buckram. 12s. 6d. net.
- Two of the Saxon Chronicles Parallel**; with supplementary extracts from the others. A Revised Text, edited, with introduction, notes, appendices, and glossary, by C. PLUMMER and J. EARLE. Two volumes. Crown 8vo, leather back. Vol. I. Text, appendices, and glossary. 10s. 6d. Vol. II. Introduction, notes, and index. 12s. 6d.
- The Saxon Chronicles (787-1001 A. D.)**. Crown 8vo, stiff covers. 3s.
- Handbook to the Land-Charters, and other Saxon Documents**, by J. EARLE. Crown 8vo. 16s.
- The Crawford Collection of early Charters and Documents**, now in the Bodleian Library. Edited by A. S. NAPIER and W. H. STEVENSON. Small 4to, cloth. 12s. net.
- The Chronicle of John of Worcester, 1118-1140**. Edited by J. R. H. WEAVER. Crown 4to. 7s. 6d. net.
- Dialogus de Scaccario**. Edited by A. HUGHES, C. G. CRUMP, and C. JOHNSON, with introduction and notes. 8vo. 12s. 6d. net.
- Passio et Miracula Beati Olai**. Edited from the Twelfth-century MS by F. METCALFE. Small 4to. 6s.
- The Song of Lewes**. Edited from the MS, with introduction and notes, by C. L. KINGSFORD. Extra fcap 8vo. 5s.
- Chronicon Galfridi le Baker de Swynebroke**, edited by Sir E. MAUNDE THOMSON, K.C.B. Small 4to, 18s.; cloth, gilt top, £1 1s.
- Chronicles of London**. Edited, with introduction and notes, by C. L. KINGSFORD. 8vo. 10s. 6d. net.
- Gascoigne's Theological Dictionary ('Liber Veritatum')**: selected passages, illustrating the condition of Church and State, 1403-1458. With an introduction by J. E. THOROLD ROGERS. Small 4to. 10s. 6d.
- Fortescue's Governance of England**. A revised text, edited, with introduction, etc, by C. PLUMMER. 8vo, leather back. 12s. 6d.
- Stow's Survey of London**. Edited by C. L. KINGSFORD. 8vo, 2 vols., with a folding map of London in 1600 (by EMERY WALKER and H. W. CRIBB) and other illustrations. 30s. net.
- The Protests of the Lords, from 1624 to 1874**; with introductions. By J. E. THOROLD ROGERS. In three volumes. 8vo. £2 2s.

The Clarendon Press Series of Charters, Statutes, etc

From the earliest times to 1307. By Bishop STUBBS.

Select Charters and other illustrations of English Constitutional History.
Eighth edition. Crown 8vo. 8s. 6d.

From 1558 to 1625. By G. W. PROTHERO.

**Select Statutes and other Constitutional Documents of
the Reigns of Elizabeth and James I.** Third edition.
Crown 8vo. 10s. 6d.

From 1625 to 1660. By S. R. GARDINER.

The Constitutional Documents of the Puritan Revolution. Third edition. Crown 8vo. 10s. 6d.

Calendars, etc

Calendar of Charters and Rolls preserved in the Bodleian Library.
8vo. £1 11s. 6d.

Calendar of the Clarendon State Papers preserved in the
Bodleian Library. In three volumes. 1869-76.

Vol. I. From 1523 to January 1649. 8vo. 18s. Vol. II. From 1649 to
1654. 8vo. 16s. Vol. III. From 1655 to 1657. 8vo. 14s.

Hakluyt's Principal Navigations, being narratives of the Voyages
of the Elizabethan Seamen to America. Selection edited by E. J. PAYNE.
Crown 8vo, with portraits. Second edition. Two volumes. 5s. each.

Also abridged, in one volume, with additional notes, maps, &c., by
C. RAYMOND BEAZLEY. Crown 8vo, with illustrations. 4s. 6d. Also,
separately, *The Voyages of Hawkins, Frobisher, and Drake*; *The Voyages
of Drake and Gilbert*, each 2s. 6d.

Aubrey's 'Brief Lives,' set down between the Years 1669 and 1696.
Edited from the Author's MSS by A. CLARK. Two volumes. 8vo. £1 5s.

Whitelock's Memorials of English Affairs from 1625 to 1660. 4 vols.
8vo. £1 10s.

Ludlow's Memoirs, 1625-1672. Edited, with Appendices of Letters
and illustrative documents, by C. H. FIRTH. Two volumes. 8vo. £1 16s.

Luttrell's Diary. A brief Historical Relation of State Affairs, 1678-1714.
Six volumes. 8vo. £1 10s. net.

Burnet's History of James II. 8vo. 9s. 6d.

Life of Sir M. Hale, with Fell's Life of
Dr. Hammond. Small 8vo. 2s. 6d.

*Memoirs of James and William, Dukes of
Hamilton.* 8vo. 7s. 6d.

Burnet's History of My Own Time. A new edition based on that of M. J. ROUTH. Edited by OSMUND AIRY. Vol. I. 12s. 6d. net. Vol. II. (Completing Charles the Second, with Index to Vols. I and II.) 12s. 6d. net.

Supplement, derived from Burnet's Memoirs, Autobiography, etc, all hitherto unpublished. Edited by H. C. FOXCROFT, 1902. 8vo. 16s. net.

The Whiteford Papers, 1739 to 1810. Ed. by W. A. S. HEWINS. 8vo. 12s. 6d.

History of Oxford

A complete list of the Publications of the Oxford Historical Society can be obtained from Mr. Frowde.

Manuscript Materials relating to the History of Oxford; contained in the printed catalogues of the Bodleian and College Libraries. By F. MADAN. 8vo. 7s. 6d.

The Early Oxford Press. A Bibliography of Printing and Publishing at Oxford, '1468'-1640. With notes, appendices, and illustrations. By F. MADAN. 8vo. 18s.

Bibliography

Cotton's Typographical Gazetteer. First Series. 8vo. 12s. 6d.

Ebert's Bibliographical Dictionary. 4 vols. 8vo. £3 3s. net.

Bishop Stubbs's and Professor Freeman's Books

The Constitutional History of England, in its Origin and Development. By W. STUBBS. Library edition. Three volumes. Demy 8vo. £2 8s. Also in three volumes, crown 8vo, price 12s. each.:

Seventeen Lectures on the Study of Mediaeval and Modern History and kindred subjects, 1867-1884. By the same. Third edition, revised and enlarged, 1900. Crown 8vo, half-roan. 8s. 6d.

History of the Norman Conquest of England; its Causes and Results. By E. A. FREEMAN. Vols. I, II and V (English edition) are out of print.

Vols. III and IV. £1 1s. each. Vol. VI (Index). 10s. 6d.

A Short History of the Norman Conquest of England. Third edition. By the same. Extra fcap 8vo. 2s. 6d.

The Reign of William Rufus and the Accession of Henry &
First. By the same. Two volumes. 8vo. £1 16s.

Special Periods and Biographies

Ancient Britain and the Invasions of Julius Caesar. By
T. RICE HOLMES. 8vo. 21s. net.

**Life and Times of Alfred the Great, being the Ford Lectures
for 1901.** By C. PLUMMER. 8vo. 5s. net.

The Domesday Boroughs. By ADOLPHUS BALLARD. 8vo. 6s. 6d. net.

Villainage in England. Essays in English Mediaeval History. By
P. VINOGRADOFF. 8vo. 16s. net.

English Society in the Eleventh Century. Essays in
English Mediaeval History. By P. VINOGRADOFF. 8vo. 16s. net.

The Gild Merchant: a contribution to British municipal history. By
C. GROSS. Two volumes. 8vo, leather back, £1 4s.

**The Welsh Wars of Edward I; a contribution to mediaeval
military history.** By J. E. MORRIS. 8vo. 9s. 6d. net.

The Great Revolt of 1381. By C. OSMAN. With two maps. 8vo.
8s. 6d. net.

Lancaster and York. (A. D. 1399-1485.) By Sir J. H. RAMSAY. Two
volumes. 8vo, with Index, £1 17s. 6d. Index separately, 1s. 6d.

Life and Letters of Thomas Cromwell. By R. B. MERRIMAN.
In two volumes. [Vol. I, Life and Letters, 1523-1535, etc. Vol. II, Letters,
1536-1540, notes, index, etc.] 8vo. 18s. net.

Edward Hyde, Earl of Clarendon. A lecture by C. H. FIRTH.
8vo. 1s. net.

A History of England, principally in the Seventeenth Century. By
L. VON RANKE. Translated under the superintendence of G. W. KITCHEN
and C. W. BOASE. Six volumes. 8vo. £3 3s. net. Index separately, 1s.

Sir Walter Raleigh, a Biography, by W. STEBBING. Post 8vo. 6s. net.

Henry Birkhead and the foundation of the Oxford Chair of Poetry.
By J. W. MACKAIL. 8vo. 1s. net.

**Biographical Memoir of Dr. William Markham, Arch-
bishop of York,** by Sir CLEMENTS MARKHAM, K.C.B. 8vo. 5s. net.

The Life and Works of John Arbuthnot. By G. A. ATKIN.
8vo, cloth extra, with Portrait. 16s.

- Life and Letters of Sir Henry Wotton.** By L. PEARSALL SMITH. 8vo. Two volumes. 25s. net.
- Great Britain and Hanover.** By A. W. WARD. Crown 8vo. 5s.
- History of the Peninsular War.** By C. OMAN. To be completed in six volumes, 8vo, with many maps, plans, and portraits.
 Already published: Vol. I. 1807-1809, to Corunna. Vol. II. 1809, to Talavera. Vol. III. 1809-10, to Torres Vedras. 14s. net each.
- Anglo-Chinese Commerce and Diplomacy: mainly in the nineteenth century.** By A. J. SARGENT. 12s. 6d. net.
- Frederick York Powell.** A Life and a selection from his Letters and Occasional Writings. By OLIVER ELTON. Two volumes. 8vo. With photogravure portraits, facsimiles, etc. 21s. net.
- David Binning Monro: a Short Memoir.** By J. COOK WILSON. 8vo, stiff boards, with portrait. 2s. net.
- F. W. Maitland.** Two lectures by A. L. SMITH. 8vo. 2s. 6d. net.

School Books

- Companion to English History (Middle Ages).** Edited by F. P. BARNARD. With 97 illustrations. Crown 8vo. 8s. 6d. net.
- School History of England to the death of Victoria.** With maps, plans, etc. By O. M. EDWARDS, R. S. RAIT, and others. Crown 8vo, 3s. 6d.
- Perspective History Chart.** By E. A. G. LAMBORN. 8s. 6d. net.

Oxford School Histories

Crown 8vo, with many illustrations, each 1s. 6d. net.

Berkshire, by E. A. G. LAMBORN.

Durham, by F. S. EDEN.

Essex, by W. H. WESTON.

Hampshire, by F. CLARKE.

Oxfordshire, by H. A. LIDDELL.

Others in preparation.

Leeds and its Neighbourhood. By A. C. PRICE. 3s. 6d.

Also, for junior pupils, illustrated, each 1s.

Stories from the History of Berkshire. By E. A. G. LAMBORN.

Stories from the History of Oxfordshire. By JOHN INNES.

History and Geography of America and the British Colonies

For other Geographical books, see pages 59, 60.

History of the New World called America. By E. J. PAYNE.
Vol. I. 8vo. 18s. Bk. I. The Discovery. Bk. II, Part I. Aboriginal America.
Vol. II. 8vo. 14s. Bk. II, Part II. Aboriginal America (concluded).

A History of Canada, 1763-1812. By Sir C. P. LUCAS, K.C.M.G.
8vo. With eight maps. 12s. 6d. net.

The Canadian War of 1812. By Sir C. P. LUCAS, K.C.M.G. 8vo.
With eight maps. 12s. 6d. net.

Historical Geography of the British Colonies. By Sir C. P.
LUCAS, K.C.M.G. Crown 8vo.

Introduction. New edition by H. E. EGERTON. 1903. (Origin and
growth of the Colonies.) With eight maps. 3s. 6d. In cheaper binding,
2s. 6d.

Vol. I. The Mediterranean and Eastern Colonies.
With 13 maps. Second edition, revised and brought up to date, by
R. E. STUBBS. 1906. 5s.

Vol. II. The West Indian Colonies. With twelve
maps. Second edition, revised and brought up to date, by C. ATCHLEY,
I.S.O. 1905. 7s. 6d.

Vol. III. West Africa. Second Edition. Revised to the
end of 1899 by H. E. EGERTON. With five maps. 7s. 6d.

Vol. IV. South and East Africa. Historical and Geo-
graphical. With eleven maps. 9s. 6d.
Also Part I. Historical. 1898. 6s. 6d. Part II. 1903. Geographical.
3s. 6d.

Vol. V. Canada, Part I. 1901. 6s. Part II, by H. E. EGERTON,
4s. 6d. Part III (Geographical) in preparation.

Vol. VI. Australasia. By J. D. ROGERS. 1907. With 22 maps.
7s. 6d. Also Part I, Historical, 4s. 6d. Part II, Geographical, 3s. 6d.

History of the Dominion of Canada. By W. P. GRESWELL. Crown 8vo. 7s. 6d.
Geography of the Dominion of Canada and Newfoundland. By the same author.
With ten maps. 1891. Crown 8vo. 6s.

Geography of Africa South of the Zambesi. By the same author. With maps.
1892. Crown 8vo. 7s. 6d.

**The Claims of the Study of Colonial History upon the
attention of the University of Oxford.** An inaugural lecture
delivered on April 28, 1906, by H. E. EGERTON. 8vo, paper covers, 1s. net.

Historical Atlas. Europe and her Colonies. 27 maps. 35s. net.

**Cornwall-Lewis's Essay on the Government of Depen-
dencies.** Edited by Sir C. P. LUCAS, K.C.M.G. 8vo, quarter-bound, 14s.

Rulers of India

Edited by Sir W. W. HUNTER. Crown 8vo. 2s. 6d. each.

- Bábar. By S. LANE-POOLE.
Albuquerque. By H. MORSE STEPHENS.
Akbar. By Colonel MALLESON.
Aurangzib. By S. LANE-POOLE.
Dupleix. By Colonel MALLESON.
Lord Clive. By Colonel MALLESON.
Warren Hastings. By Captain L. J. TROTTER.
Mádhava Ráo Sindhia. By H. G. KEENE.
The Marquis of Cornwallis. By W. S. SETON-KARR.
Haidar Alí and Tipú Sultán. By L. B. BOWRING.
The Marquis Wellesley, K.G. By W. H. HUTTON.
Marquess of Hastings. By Major ROSS-OF-BLADENSBURG.
Mountstuart Elphinstone. By J. S. COTTON.
Sir Thomas Munro. By J. BRADSHAW.
Earl Amherst. By ANNE T. RITCHIE and R. EVANS.
Lord William Bentinck. By D. C. BOULGER.
The Earl of Auckland. By Captain L. J. TROTTER.
Viscount Hardinge. By his son, VISCOUNT HARDINGE.
Ranjit Singh. By Sir L. GRIFFIN.
The Marquess of Dalhousie. By Sir W. W. HUNTER.
James Thomason. By Sir R. TEMPLE.
John Russell Colvin. By Sir A. COLVIN.
Sir Henry Lawrence. By Lieut.-General J. J. McLEOD INNES.
Clyde and Strathnairn. By Major-General Sir O. T. BURNE.
Earl Canning. By Sir H. S. CUNNINGHAM.
Lord Lawrence. By Sir C. AITCHISON.
The Earl of Mayo. By Sir W. W. HUNTER.

Asoka. By V. A. SMITH. Second edition, 1909. 3s. 6d. net.

Sketches of Rulers of India. Abridged from the *Rulers of India* by G. D. OSWELL. Vol. I, The Mutiny and After; Vol. II, The Company's Governors; Vol. III, The Governors-General; Vol. IV, The Princes of India. Crown 8vo. 2s. net each.

The Imperial Gazetteer of India. New edition, 1908. The entire work in 26 vols., cloth £5 net, morocco back £6 6s. net. The 4 vols. of 'The Indian Empire' separately, cloth 6s. net each, morocco back 7s. 6d. net; Atlas, cloth 15s. net, morocco back 17s. 6d. net; the remaining 21 vols., cloth £4 4s. net, morocco back £5 5s. net.

Vol. I. Descriptive.

Vol. II. Historical.

Vol. III. Economic.

Vol. IV. Administrative.

Vol. V-XXIV. Alphabetical Gazetteer.

Vol. XXV. Index.

Vol. XXVI. Atlas.

Each volume contains a map of India specially prepared for this Edition.

Reprints from the Imperial Gazetteer.

A sketch of the Flora of British India. By Sir JOSEPH HOOKER. 8vo. Paper covers. 1s. net.

The Indian Army. A sketch of its History and Organization. 8vo. Paper covers. 1s. net.

A Brief History of the Indian Peoples. By Sir W. W. HUNTER. Revised up to 1903 by W. H. HUTTON. Eighty-ninth thousand. 3s. 6d.

The Government of India, being a digest of the Statute Law relating thereto; with historical introduction and illustrative documents. By Sir C. P. ILBERT. Second edition, 1907. 10s. 6d. net.

The Early History of India from 600 B.C. to the Muhammadan Conquest, including the invasion of Alexander the Great. By V. A. SMITH. 8vo. With maps, plans, and other illustrations. Second edition, revised and enlarged. 14s. net.

The Oxford Student's History of India. By V. A. SMITH. Crown 8vo. With 7 maps and 10 other illustrations. 2s. 6d.

The English Factories in India: By W. FOSTER. Med. 8vo. (Published under the patronage of His Majesty's Secretary of State for India in Council.)

Three Vols., 1618-21, 1622-3, 1624-9. 12s. 6d. net each.

(The six previous volumes of Letters received by the East India Company from its Servants in the East (1602-1617) may also be obtained, price 15s. each volume.)

Court Minutes of the East India Company, 1635-1639.

By E. B. SAINSBURY. Introduction by W. FOSTER. Med. 8vo. 12s. 6d. net.

The Court Minutes of the Company previous to 1635 have been calendared in the Calendars of State Papers, East Indies, published by the Public Record Office.

Wellesley's Despatches, Treaties, and other Papers relating to his Government of India. Selection edited by S. J. OWEN. 8vo. £1 4s.

Wellington's Despatches, Treaties, and other Papers relating to India. Selection edited by S. J. OWEN. 8vo. £1 4s.

Fastings and the Rohilla War. By Sir J. STRACHEY. 8vo. 10s. 6d.

European History

Historical Atlas of Modern Europe, from the Decline of the Roman Empire. 90 maps, with letterpress to each: the maps printed by W. & A. K. JOHNSTON, Ltd., and the whole edited by R. L. POOLE.

In one volume, imperial 4to, half-persian, £5 15s. 6d. net; or in selected sets—British Empire, etc., at various prices from 30s. to 35s. net each; or in single maps, 1s. 6d. net each. Prospectus on application.

Genealogical Tables illustrative of Modern History. By H. B. GEORGE. Fourth (1904) edition. Oblong 4to, boards. 7s. 6d.

The Life and Times of James the First of Aragon. By F. D. SWIFT. 8vo. 12s. 6d.

The Renaissance and the Reformation. A textbook of European History, 1494–1610. By E. M. TANNER. Crown 8vo, with 8 maps. 3s. 6d.

The Fall of the Old Order. A textbook of European History, 1763–1815. By I. L. PLUNKET. Crown 8vo, with 10 maps and plans. 4s. 6d.

A History of France. By G. W. KITCHIN. Cr. 8vo; revised, Vol. I (to 1453), by F. F. URQUHART; Vols. II (1624), III (1795), by A. HASSALL. 10s. 6d. each.

De Tocqueville's L'Ancien Régime et la Révolution. Edited, with introductions and notes, by G. W. HEADLAM. Crown 8vo. 6s.

Speeches of the Statesmen and Orators of the French Revolution, 1789–1795. Ed. H. MORSE STEPHENS. Two vols. Crown 8vo. £1 1s.

Documents of the French Revolution, 1789–1791. By L. G. WICKHAM LEGG. Crown 8vo. Two volumes. 12s. net.

Napoleonic Statesmanship: Germany. By H. A. L. FISHER. 8vo, with maps. 12s. 6d. net.

Bonapartism. Six lectures by H. A. L. FISHER. 8vo. 3s. 6d. net.

Thiers' Moscow Expedition, edited by H. B. GEORGE. Cr. 8vo, 6 maps. 5s.

Great Britain and Hanover. By A. W. WARD. Crown 8vo. 5s.

History of the Peninsular War. By C. OMAN. See p. 55.

The Oxford Geographies

Relations of Geography and History. By H. B. GEORGE. With two maps. Crown 8vo. Third edition. 4s. 6d.

Geography for Schools, by A. HUGHES. Crown 8vo. 2s. 6d.

The Oxford Geographies. By A. J. HERBERTSON. Crown 8vo.

Vol. I. The Preliminary Geography, Ed. 2, 72 maps and diagrams, 1s. 6d.

Vol. II. The Junior Geography, Ed. 2, 166 maps and diagrams, 2s.

Vol. III. The Senior Geography, Ed. 2, 117 maps and diagrams, 2s. 6d.

The Elementary Geographies. By F. D. HERBERTSON. With maps and illustrations from photographs. Crown 8vo. Vol. I: Physiography. 10d. Vol. III: Europe. 1s. Others in preparation.

Practical Geography. By J. F. UNSTEAD. Crown 8vo. Part I, 27 maps and diagrams, Part II, 21 maps and diagrams, each 1s. 6d. together 2s. 6d.

The Dawn of Modern Geography. By C. R. BEAZLEY. In three volumes. £2 10s. net. Vol. I (to A.D. 900). Not sold separately. Vol. II (A.D. 900-1260). 15s. net. Vol. III. 20s. net.

Regions of the World. Geographical Memoirs under the general editorship of H. J. MACKINDER. Medium 8vo. 7s. 6d. net per volume.

Britain and the British Seas. Second edition. By H. J. MACKINDER. —

Central Europe. By JOHN PARTSCH. — The Nearer East. By D.

G. HOGARTH. — North America. By J. RUSSELL. — India. By Sir

THOMAS HOLDICH. — The Far East. By ARCHIBALD LITTLE.

Frontiers: Romanes Lecture (1907) by Lord CURZON OF KEDLESTON. 8vo. 2s. n.

The Face of the Earth. By EDUARD SUESS. See p. 92.

Anthropology

Transactions of the Third (1908) International Congress for the History of Religions. Royal 8vo. 2 vols. 21s. net.

Anthropological Essays presented to EDWARD BURNETT TYLOR in honour of his seventy-fifth birthday; by H. BALFOUR, A. E. CRAWLEY, D. J. CUNNINGHAM, L. R. FARNELL, J. G. FRAZER, A. C. HADDON, E. S. HARTLAND, A. LANG, R. R. MARETT, C. S. MYERS, J. L. MYRES, C. H. READ, Sir J. RHËS, W. RIDGEWAY, W. H. R. RIVERS, C. G. SELIGMANN, T. A. JOYCE, N. W. THOMAS, A. THOMSON, E. WESTERMARCK; with a bibliography by BARBARA W. FREIRE-MARRECO. Imperial 8vo. 21s. net.

The Evolution of Culture, and other Essays, by the late Lieut.-Gen. A. LANE-FOX PIT-RIVERS; edited by J. L. MYRES, with an Introduction by H. BALFOUR. 8vo, with 21 plates, 7s. 6d. net.

Anthropology and the Classics. Six lectures by A. EVANS, A. LANG, G. G. A. MURRAY, F. B. JEVONS, J. L. MYRES, W. W. FOWLER. Edited by R. R. MARETT. 8vo. Illustrated. 6s. net.

Folk-Memory. By WALTER JOHNSON. 8vo. Illustrated. 12s. 6d. net.

Celtic Folklore: Welsh and Manx. By J. RHËS. 2 vols. 8vo. £1 1s.

Studies in the Arthurian Legend. By J. RHËS. 8vo. 12s. 6d.

Iceland and the Faroes. By N. ANNANDALE. With an appendix on the Celtic Pony, by F. H. A. MARSHALL. Crown 8vo. 4s. 6d. net.

Dubois' Hindu Manners. Translated and edited by H. K. BEAUCHAMP. Third edition. Crown 8vo. 6s. net. On India Paper, 7s. 6d. net.

The Melanesians, studies in their Anthropology and Folk-Lore. By R. H. CODRINGTON. 8vo. 16s. net.

The Masai, their Language and Folk-lore. By A. C. HOLLIS. With introduction by Sir CHARLES ELIOT. 8vo. Illustrated. 14s. net.

The Nandi, their Language and Folk-lore. By A. C. HOLLIS. With introduction by Sir CHARLES ELIOT. 8vo. Illustrated. 16s. net.

The Ancient Races of the Thebaid: an anthropometrical study. By ARTHUR THOMSON and D. RANDALL-MACIVER. Imperial 4to, with 6 collotypes, 6 lithographic charts, and many other illustrations. 42s. net.

The Earliest Inhabitants of Abydos. (A craniological study.) By D. RANDALL-MACIVER. Portfolio. 10s. 6d. net.

LAW

Jurisprudence

Bentham's Fragment on Government. Edited by F. C. MONTAGUE. 8vo. 7s. 6d.

Bentham's Introduction to the Principles of Morals and Legislation. Second edition. Crown 8vo. 6s. 6d.

Studies in History and Jurisprudence. By the Right Hon. JAMES BRYCE. 1901. Two volumes. 8vo. £1 5s. net.

The Elements of Jurisprudence. By T. E. HOLLAND. Tenth edition. 1906. 8vo. 10s. 6d.

Elements of Law, considered with reference to Principles of General Jurisprudence. By Sir W. MARKBY, K.C.I.E. Sixth edition revised, 1905. 8vo. 12s. 6d.

Roman Law

Imperatoris Iustiniani Institutionum Libri Quattuor; with introductions, commentary, and translation, by J. B. MOYLE. Two volumes. 8vo. Vol. I (fourth edition, 1903), 16s.; Vol. II, Translation (fourth edition, 1906), 6s.

The Institutes of Justinian, edited as a recension of the Institutes of Gaius. By T. E. HOLLAND. Second edition. Extra fcap 8vo. 5s.

Select Titles from the Digest of Justinian. By T. E. HOLLAND and C. L. SHADWELL. 8vo. 14s.

Also, sold in parts, in paper covers: Part I. Introductory Titles. 2s. 6d. Part II. Family Law. 1s. Part III. Property Law. 2s. 6d. Part IV. Law of Obligations. No. 1. 3s. 6d. No. 2. 4s. 6d.

Gai Institutionum Iuris Civilis Commentarii Quattuor: with a translation and commentary by the late E. POSTE. Fourth edition. Revised and enlarged by E. A. WHITTUCK, with an historical introduction by A. H. J. GREENIDGE. 8vo. 16s. net.

Institutes of Roman Law, by R. SOHM. Translated by J. C. LEDLIE: with an introductory essay by E. GRUEBER. Third edition. 1907. 8vo. 16s. net.

Infamia; its place in Roman Public and Private Law. By A. H. J. GREENIDGE. 8vo. 10s. 6d.

Legal Procedure in Cicero's Time. By A. H. J. GREENIDGE. 8vo. 25s. net.

The Roman Law of Damage to Property: being a commentary on the title of the Digest 'Ad Legem Aquilianam' (ix. 2), with an introduction to the study of the Corpus Iuris Civilis. By E. GRUEBER. 8vo. 10s. 6d.

Contract of Sale in the Civil Law. By J. B. MOYLE. 8vo. 10s. 6d.

The Principles of German Civil Law. By ERNEST J. SCHWETTER. 1907. 8vo. 12s. 6d. net.

English Law

Principles of the English Law of Contract, and of Agency in its relation to Contract. By Sir W. R. ANSON. Eleventh edition. 1906. 8vo. 10s. 6d.

Law and Custom of the Constitution. By the same. In two volumes. 8vo.

Vol. I. Parliament. Fourth edition. 1909. 12s. 6d. net.

Vol. II. The Crown. Third edition. Part I, 1907. 10s. 6d. net. Part II, 1908. 8s. 6d. net.

Introduction to the History of the Law of Real Property.

By Sir K. E. DREBY. Fifth edition. 8vo. 12s. 6d.

Legislative Methods and Forms. By Sir C. P. ILBERT, K.C.S.I. 1901. 8vo. 16s.

Modern Land Law. By E. JENKS. 8vo. 15s.

Essay on Possession in the Common Law. By Sir F. POLLOCK and Sir R. S. WRIGHT. 8vo. 8s. 6d.

Outline of the Law of Property. By T. RALEIGH. 8vo. 7s. 6d.

Law in Daily Life. By RUD. VON JHERING. Translated with Notes and Additions by H. GOUDY. Crown 8vo. 3s. 6d. net.

Cases illustrating the Principles of the Law of Torts, with table of all Cases cited. By F. R. Y. RADCLIFFE and J. C. MILES. 8vo. 1904. 12s. 6d. net.

The Management of Private Affairs. By JOSEPH KING, F. T. R. BIGHAM, M. L. GWYER, EDWIN CANNAN, J. S. C. BRIDGE, A. M. LATTER. Crown 8vo. 2s. 6d. net.

Calendar of Charters and Rolls, containing those preserved in the Bodleian Library. 8vo. £1 11s. 6d.

Handbook to the Land-Charters, and other Saxon Documents. By J. EARLE. Crown 8vo. 16s.

Fortescue's Difference between an Absolute and a Limited Monarchy. Text revised and edited, with introduction, etc, by C. PLUMMER. 8vo, leather back, 12s. 6d.

Villainage in England. By P. VINOGRADOFF. 8vo. 16s. net.

Welsh Mediaeval Law: the Laws of Howel the Good. Text, translation, etc, by A. W. WADE EVANS. Crown 8vo. 8s. 6d. net.

Constitutional Documents

Select Charters and other Illustrations of English Constitutional History, from the earliest times to Edward I. Arranged and edited by W. STUBBS. Eighth edition. 1900. Crown 8vo. 8s. 6d.

Select Statutes and other Constitutional Documents, illustrative of the reigns of Elizabeth and James I. Edited by G. W. PROTHERO. Third edition. Crown 8vo. 10s. 6d.

Constitutional Documents of the Puritan Revolution, selected and edited by S. R. GARDNER. Third edition. Crown 8vo. 10s. 6d.

International Law

International Law. By W. E. HALL. Fifth edition by J. B. ATLAY. 1904. 8vo. £1 1s. net.

Treatise on the Foreign Powers and Jurisdiction of the British Crown. By W. E. HALL. 8vo. 10s. 6d.

The European Concert in the Eastern Question, a collection of treaties and other public acts. Edited, with introductions and notes, by T. E. HOLLAND. 1885. 8vo. 12s. 6d.

Studies in International Law. By T. E. HOLLAND. 1898. 8vo. 10s. 6d.

The Laws of War on Land. By T. E. HOLLAND. 1908. 8vo. 6s. net.

Gentilis Alberici de Iure Belli Libri Tres edidit T. E. HOLLAND. 1877. Small quarto, half-morocco. £1 1s.

The Law of Nations. By Sir T. TWISS. Part I. In time of peace. New edition, revised and enlarged. 8vo. 15s.

Pacific Blockade. By A. E. HOGAN. 1908. 8vo. 6s. net.

Colonial and Indian Law

The Government of India, being a Digest of the Statute Law relating thereto, with historical introduction and illustrative documents. By Sir C. P. ILBERT, K.C.S.I. Second edition. 1907. 8vo, cloth. 10s. 6d. net.

British Rule and Jurisdiction beyond the Seas. By the late Sir H. JENKYNs, K.C.B., with a preface by Sir C. P. ILBERT, and a portrait of the author. 1902. 8vo, leather back, 15s. net.

Cornwall-Lewis's Essay on the Government of Dependencies. Edited by Sir C. P. LUCAS, K.C.M.G. 8vo, leather back, 14s.

An Introduction to Hindu and Mahommedan Law for the use of students. 1906. By Sir W. MARKBY, K.C.I.E. 6s. net.

Land-Revenue and Tenure in British India. By B. H. BADEN-POWELL, C.I.E. With map. Second edition, revised by T. W. HOLDERNESS, C.S.I. (1907.) Crown 8vo. 5s. net.

Land-Systems of British India, being a manual of the Land-Tenures, and of the systems of Land-Revenue administration. By the same. Three volumes. 8vo, with map. £3 3s.

Anglo-Indian Codes, by WHITLEY STOKES. 8vo.

Vol. I. Substantive Law. £1 10s. Vol. II. Adjective Law. £1 15s.

1st supplement, 2s. 6d. 2nd supplement, to 1891, 4s. 6d. In one vol., 6s. 6d.

The Indian Evidence Act, with notes by Sir W. MARKBY, K.C.I.E. 8vo. 3s. 6d. net (published by Mr. Frowde).

Corps de Droit Ottoman : un Recueil des Codes, Lois, Règlements, Ordonnances et Actes les plus importants du Droit Intérieur, et d'Études sur le Droit Coutumier de l'Empire Ottoman. Par GEORGE YOUNG. 1905. Seven vols. 8vo. Cloth, £4 14s. 6d. net; paper covers, £4 4s. net. Parts I (Vols. I-III) and II (Vols. IV-VII) can be obtained separately; price per part, in cloth, £2 17s. 6d. net, in paper covers, £2 12s. 6d. net.

Political Science and Economy

For Bryce's *Studies* and other books on general jurisprudence and political science, see p. 61.

Industrial Organization in the 16th and 17th Centuries.

By G. UNWIN. 8vo. 7s. 6d. net.

Relations of the Advanced and Backward Races of Mankind, the Romanes Lecture for 1902. By J. BRYCE. 8vo. 2s. net.

Cornwall-Lewis's Remarks on the Use and Abuse of some Political Terms. New edition, with introduction by T. RALEIGH. Crown 8vo, paper, 3s. 6d.; cloth, 4s. 6d.

Adam Smith's Wealth of Nations. Edited by J. E. THOROLD ROGERS. Two volumes. 8vo. £1 1s. net.

Adam Smith's Lectures on Justice, Police, Revenue and Arms. Edited with introduction and notes by E. CANNAN. 8vo. 10s. 6d. net.

Bluntschli's Theory of the State. Translated from the sixth German edition. Third edition. 1901. Crown 8vo, leather back, 8s. 6d.

Co-operative Production. By B. JONES. With preface by A. H. DYKE-ACLAND. Two volumes. Crown 8vo. 15s. net.

A Geometrical Political Economy. Being an elementary Treatise on the method of explaining some Theories of Pure Economic Science by diagrams. By H. CUNYNGHAME, C.B. Cr. 8vo. 2s. 6d. net.

The Elements of Railway Economics. By W. M. ACWORTH. Crown 8vo. Second impression. 2s. net.

Elementary Political Economy. By E. CANNAN. Fourth edition. Extra fcap 8vo, 1s. net.

Elementary Politics. By Sir T. RALEIGH. Sixth edition revised. Extra fcap 8vo, stiff covers, 1s. net.

The Study of Economic History. By L. L. PRICE. 1s. net.

Economic Documents

Ricardo's Letters to Malthus (1810-1823). Edited by J. BONAR. 8vo. 7s. 6d. **Letters to Trower and others (1811-1823).** Edited by J. BONAR and J. H. HOLLANDER. 8vo. 7s. 6d.

Lloyd's Prices of Corn in Oxford, 1583-1830. 8vo. 1s.

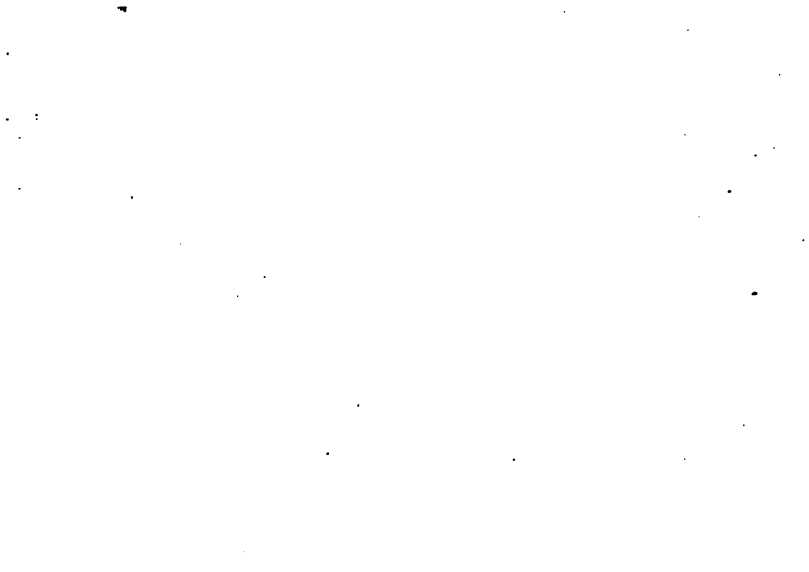
First Nine Years of the Bank of England. By J. E. THOROLD ROGERS. 8vo. 8s. 6d.

History of Agriculture

The History of Agriculture and Prices in England, A.D. 1259-1793. By J. E. THOROLD ROGERS. 8vo. Vols. I and II (1259-1400). 84s. net. Vols. III and IV (1401-1582). 32s. net. Vols. V and VI (1583-1702). 32s. net. Vol. VII. In two Parts (1702-1793). 32s. net.

History of English Agriculture. By W. H. R. CURTLER. Crown 8vo. 6s. 6d. net.

The Disappearance of the Small Landowner. By A. H. JOHNSON. Crown 8vo. 5s. net.



1875

1875

1875

Stanford University Libraries



3 6105 005 581 843

Pf

STANFORD UNIVERSITY LIBRARIES
CECIL H. GREEN LIBRARY
STANFORD, CALIFORNIA 94305-6004
(415) 723-1493

All books may be recalled after 7 days

DATE DUE

28D DEC 05 1994

MAY 9

28D JUN 21 1990

